Viktor Korchnoi, Vladimir Zak

KING'S GAMBIT

Vladimir Zak is the author of *Improve Your Chess Results*
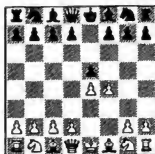
King's Gambit

King's Gambit

VIKTOR KORCHNOI
VLADIMIR ZAK

Translated by Philip Booth
Updated by Steve Berry

Contents

Preface

This book is designed to show that the King's Gambit is a formidable opening, giving White as good chances of advantage as the Ruy Lopez.

Viktor Korchnoi of Leningrad won the USSR Championship in 1960, 1962, 1965 and 1970, and has participated in four World Championship Candidates: 1962, 1968, 1971 and 1974. He played matches against Karpov for the world title in 1978 and 1981.

Vladimir Zak, also of Leningrad, is a leading Soviet trainer. Perhaps the most notable of the juniors to have been under his guidance was Boris Spassky.

Philip Booth, well known for his work on several other Batsford books, translated the material and checked it against *King's Gambit* by Trevor Hay and *Königsgambit* by Edwin Bhend.

We are grateful to Tim Harding for supplying the material on which we have based variation D of Chapter 15.

The editors have tried to make the references more precise, now a standard Batsford procedure, as is the augmentation of material by the inclusion of some complete games. We have also found it necessary to pay more attention to move-order in some lines.

<div align="right">

Kevin J. O'Connell

Robert G. Wade

</div>

Symbols

+	Check
± ∓	Slight advantage
± ∓	Clear advantage
++ ∓∓	Winning advantage
=	Level position
∞	Unclear position
!	Good move
!!	Outstanding move
!?	Interesting move
?!	Dubious move
?	Weak move
??	Blunder
corres	Correspondence
Ol	Olympiad
IZ	Interzonal
L.	League
Ch	Championship
½f	Semi-final

Introduction

The King's Gambit is one of the most ancient openings and an opening which leads to a sharp struggle from the very first moves.

Whereas in the Ruy Lopez White lays siege to Black's e-pawn on e5 slowly, over a large number of moves, in the King's Gambit White begins to storm Black's central pawn right away with his second move, without regard for the resultant weaknesses or for the forced material sacrifices, which are sometimes quite considerable.

The King's Gambit was especially popular in the last century. The outstanding masters, who used the King's Gambit in their most important encounters, set themselves the basic aim of obtaining an attack against the enemy king and, in the first place, an attack on f7. And to this end, caring little about the means they used, they would clear away all the obstacles on the f-file.

These limited strategic aims could not apparently satisfy the tastes of numerous talented players who made their appearance at the end of the nineteenth and at the beginning of the twentieth century, and so the King's Gambit became a rare guest at international tournaments.

Nowadays, as a result of the efforts of many theoreticians, including the grandmasters Keres, Bronstein and in particular ex-World Champion Boris Spassky, the King's Gambit has begun to be resurrected, but this time on a completely different basis.

Without discarding the idea of building up a rapid attack against the enemy king, but also without showing any reluctance to transpose into the better endgame, they have updated a whole series of variations and transformed the King's Gambit into a totally modern opening. The games played by these grandmasters and by a number of other players in recent years show that, because of the poor knowledge of the theory of the King's Gambit, the probability of White's obtaining an opening advantage is very great.

In the present book the authors have tried to draw together the material available at present, so that lovers of the King's Gambit may have the opportunity to study all the most fashionable systems of this interesting opening.

It remains to be said that many old variations and pieces of analysis have been improved upon by the authors, and consequently the assessment of them is in a number of cases different from the usual.

King's Knight's Gambit: Introductory Remarks

1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♘f3. This is White's most natural third move, preparing to seize the centre and repelling the threat of an unpleasant check on h4. In reply to it Black has several methods of defence at his disposal and these can be divided into two groups that differ fundamentally from each other.

The first group (Chapter 1-7) consists of the old variations in which Black defends his pawn on f4 by 3 ... g5. In the second group (Chapters 8-12) are the more modern variations where Black avoids weakening his position by this pawn advance and strives for a counterattack by bringing his pieces out as quickly as possible.

The analysis we shall present in this book reveals that the popularity over the last fifty or sixty years of this second method of play seems to have been due to insufficiently accurate play by White, since in all the variations of this second group White's chances of obtaining an advantage out of the opening are by no means fewer than in any other opening. His task appears considerably more difficult, however, when Black chooses the old method of play of the first group.

1   The Kieseritsky Gambit

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	g5
4	h4	g4
5	♘e5	*(1)*

This move appears to be the strongest in this position and offers White chances of obtaining a slight advantage. Detailed analyses of the possible continuations were published by Kieseritsky more than a hundred years ago.
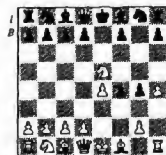
Black has a large choice amongst the following:

A   5 ... ♕e7
B   5 ... ♘c6
C   5 ... ♗e7
D   5 ... d5
E   5 ... ♗g7?!
F   5 ... ♘f6
G   5 ... d6
H   5 ... h5

A

5 ...   ♕e7

As with B, C and D, this leads to a clear advantage for White.

6   d4!

Weaker is 6 ♘xg4 f5 7 ♘f2 fe 8 ♕h5+ ♔d8 9 ♕f5 e3! 10 de fe 11 ♘e4 ♗h6 and Black stands better, or 10 ♘g4 ed+ 11 ♔xd2 d6 12 ♕xf4 h5 and 13 ... ♗h6.

6 ...   d6!

Not so good is 6 ... f5 7 ♗c4! ♘f6 8 ♘c3 d6 9 ♗f7+ ♔d8 10 ♗xf4 ♘bd7 11 ♗b3 ♔e8 12 ♘f7 ♖g8 13 ♘g5 ♖g7 14 ♘e6 with advantage to White (Cozio 1766).

7 ♘xg4 f5

To White's advantage is 7 ... ♕xe4+ 8 ♕e2 ♗f5 9 ♘xf4 ♕xe2+ 10 ♗xe2 ♘xc2 11 ♘c3, e.g. 11 ... c6 12 ♘e3 or 11 ... ♗f5 12 ♘d5 ♗xg4 13 ♗xg4 ♘a6 14 0-0 etc.

8 ♘f2 ♘f6

9 ♗xf4 ♘xe4

On 9 ... fe 10 d5! is unpleasant for Black.

10 ♕h5+ ♔d8

11 ♗e2 ♘xf6 12 ♕f3 ♘c6 13 c3 with queen-side castling to follow.

B

5 ... ♘c6

6 d4!

Bad are:

a) 6 ♘xc6 dc 7 d4 ♘f6 8 e5 ♘h5.
b) 6 ♘xg4 d5 7 ed ♕e7+ 8 ♗e2 ♘d3 9 ♘f2 ♗f5 10 d3 0-0-0 Neumann-Bergell, 1872.

6 ... ♘xe5

7 de d6

8 ♗xf4 ♕e7

Or 8 ... ♗g7 9 ♘c3 de 10 ♕xd8+ ♔xd8 11 0-0-0 ♗d7 12 ♗e3 with advantage to White (Bilguer 1916).

9 ed ♕xe4+

10 ♕e2 ♕xe2+ 11 ♗xe2 ♗xd6 12 ♗xd6 cd 13 ♘c3 and Black has a difficult position (Collijn 1921).

C

5 ... ♗e7

6 ♗c4

Weaker are:

a) 6 ♘xg4 d6 7 ♕g7 ♗xh4+ 8 ♔d1 de 9 ♕xh8 ♗g4+ 10 ♗e2 ♕g5! 11 ♘c3 ♘c6 12 ♖xh4 ♗xe2+ 13

♘xe2 ♕xg2 14 d3 f3 with a strong attack for Black (Bilguer 1880).
b) 6 ♘xg4 d5 7 ed ♗xh4+ 8 ♗f2 ♗xf2+ 9 ♘xf2 ♕xd5 with advantage to Black (Bilguer 1880).

6 ... ♗xh4+

7 ♔f1 d5 8 ♘xd5 ♘h6 9 d4 ♗g5 10 ♘c3 c6 11 ♗b3 f6 12 ♘d3 ♕xd4 13 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 14 ♘xf4 ♗xh8 ♕xh8 15 ♖xd1 ♘f7 16 ♘g6 ♖g8 17 ♖xh7 and White wins (Bilguer 1880).

D

5 ... d5

6 d4!

Inferior are:

a) 6 ed ♕e7 7 ♕e2 ♘f6 8 d4 ♘h5 9 ♘d3 ♗f5 10 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 11 ♗xf4 ♘g3.
b) 6 ♘xg4 dc 7 ♘f2 ♘f6 8 ♘c3 ♗f5 9 ♕e2 ♗c5 10 ♘xe4 0-0 etc.

6 ... ♘f6

7 ♗xf4

After 7 ed ♕xd5 8 ♘c3 ♗b4 9 ♗f2! ♘e4+ play becomes level.

In this line Black can also play 7 ... ♗g7!. A game Balashov-Tseshkovsky, USSR 1974, continued 8 ♗xf4 ♘xd5 9 ♕d2 ♘c6 10 ♗b5 0-0 11 ♗xc6 bc 12 ♗h6 and now 12 ... f6 would have led to Black's advantage.

7 ... ♘xe4

8 ♘d2!

The text move was recommended by Caro. White will get no advantage from 8 ♗d3 ♗d6 9 0-0 ♕xh4 10 ♗xe4 de 11 g3 ♕h5 12 ♘c3 f5 13 ♘d5 0-0 14 ♘xg4 ♕xg4 15 ♕xg4 fg 16 ♗xd6 cd 17 ♘e7+

♔g7 18 ♖xf8 ♔xf8 19 ♘xc8 with an equal game according to Bilguer, 1916.

8 ... ♘xd2

9 ♕xd2 ♗d6

10 0-0-0 ♗e6

11 ♗d3 ♘d7

11 ... f6 12 ♖de1! ♗xe5 for 12 ... dc 13 ♗xc5 ♘d7 14 ♗xh8 ♕xh8 15 ♕h6) 13 ♗xe5 ♗d7 14 ♗xf6 ♕xf6 15 ♘hf1 ♕g7 16 ♘xe6! wins for White.

12 ♖de1 ♘xe5

13 ♗xe5 ♗xe5

14 ♖xe5 ♕d7 15 ♕g5! ♕e7 16 ♗f5 ♕xg5+ 17 hg and White wins back the pawn with the better endgame (Keres)

E

5 ... ♗g7!

This idea of Louis Paulsen is the strongest choice. Black avoids set-ups which are favourable to White.

6 d4

White cannot count on any advantage from 6 ♘xg4 d5:
a) 7 ♕e2? de 8 ♕xc4+ ♕e7 9 ♘f2 ♗f5 10 ♕xe7+ ♘xe7 and although material was level Black was considerably ahead in development in Gheorghiu-Kavalek, Bucharest 1966.
b) 7 ♕f3 ♘e6 8 ♗b5 ♘ge7 9 ♕xf4 ♗xg4 (also possible is 9 ... ♘g6) is completely unsatisfactory for White, as is
c) 7 ed ♕e7+, or
d) 7 ♘f2 de 8 ♘xe4 ♕e7 9 ♕e2

♘c6 10 c3 ♘f6 11 ♘g5 ♘e5 12 d4 ♗g4.

c) 7 d4! and now

e1) 7 ... ♕xg4? 8 ♕xg4 ♗xd4 9 ♘c3 with an attack (Keres).

e2) 7 ... de 8 ♗xf4 ♕xd4 9 ♕xd4 10 c3 ♗xg4 11 cd ♘c6 12 ♗b5 0-0-0 13 ♘c5 bc b4 14 0-0 f6! 15 ♗e3 f5 16 ♘c3 ♘f5 17 ♖f2 ♘d5 18 ♘xd5 cd 19 ♖c1 with a probable draw (Levenfish).

E1 6 ... d6
F2 6 ... ♘f6

E1

6 ... d6

7 ♘xg4

It is doubtful whether Cordel's piece sacrifice, 7 ♘xf7? ♔xf7 (Pillsbury-Marco, Vienna 1903) is adequate: 8 ♗c4+ ♔e8 9 ♗xf4 ♘f6 10 ♗e3 and now, instead of 10 ... ♘e7, 10 ... ♗e6! deserves attention.

7 ♘c4 (Hebden-Hawksworth, London 1985) also proved unsatisfactory after 7 ... ♘f6 8 ♗xf4 ♘xe4 9 ♗bd2 ♕f6! 10 g3 ♘xd2 11 ♕xd2 ♕xd4.

7 ... ♗xg4

8 ♕xg4 ♗xd4

9 c3 ♗e5

10 ♗xf4 ♘f6

Now it is Black who gains control of the e5 square.

In Lutikov-Furman, 26th USSR Ch, Tiflis 1959, White obtained the better ending after 10 ... ♗xf4 11 ♕xf4 ♕f6 12 g3 ♘d7 13 ♘d2 ♕xf4 14 gf.

11	♕f3	♘bd7
12	g3	♕e7!
13	♘d2	

With weaknesses in the positions of both sides, there is good reason for considering the chances to be equal.

E2

6	...	♘f6

Paulsen's method. In this position – which can be reached by transposition after 5 ... ♘f6 6 d4 ♗g7 – White can secure a good game.

E21 7 ♘xg4
E22 7 ♗c4
E23 7 ♘c3

E21

7	♘xg4	♘xe4
8	♗xf4	0-0!

This move is considerably stronger than 8 ... ♕e7. After the latter move a game between Charousek and Burn, Cologne 1898, continued 9 ♕e2 ♗xd4 10 c3 ♗g7 11 ♘e3 ♕e6 12 g3 0-0 13 ♘h3 f5 14 0-0 with better chances for White.

9	♘c3	♖e8

In *ECO* Korchnoi gives the pretty line 9 ... d5 10 ♘e3 ♘c6 11 ♘cxd5 ♗xd4 12 ♘xc7 ♗xc3 13 ♕xd8 ♗f2+ winning for Black.

10	♘e3	d5
11	♘cxd5	♘g3
12	♘xc7	♖xe3+
13	♔f2	♘xh1+
14	♔xe3	♘c6

Winning for Black. Analysis by Glaskov.

E22

7	♗c4	

This move is rightly condemned by theory.

7	...	d5

Although this move is considered the best retort, 7 ... 0-0 is also possible. After 8 ♘c3 Black has two possibilities:

a) 8 ... ♕e7 (Hirschbach) is risky because of 9 ♗xf4 d6 10 ♘xf7! (Lange).

b) But better is 8 ... d6 9 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 10 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 11 ♗xf4 ♕e8 12 ♕d3 (also leading to unclear play is the immediate 12 0-0 ♗g8 13 ♕d3 ♘c6 14 ♗g5 ♕g6 15 ♕c4+ ♔h8 16 ♖ae1 – Bilguer 1880 – 16 ... ♘h5! and now 17 d5 ♘e5 18 ♕xc7 h6 19 ♗e7? does not work because of 19 ... ♘f3+!) 12 ... ♗f5 (otherwise 13 0-0-0) 13 0-0 ♗xe4 14 ♕c4+ d5 15 ♕b3 ♔g8 16 ♕xb7 ♘c6 when Black's position is preferable.

8	ed	♘h5 (2)

This move (considered strongest by Paulsen) leads to complicated play with chances for both sides. Simpler are:

a) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♗xf4 ♘xd5 10 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 11 0-0 c5 12 c3 (weaker is 12 ♘c3 ♕xd4 13 ♕xd4 cd 14 ♘d5 ♘c6 15 ♘xc6 bc 16 ♘e7+ ♔h8 17 ♘xc6 ♗b7 win the better game for Black, Steinitz-Blackburne, 3rd match game, London 1876) 12 ... cd 13 cd ♕xd4 14 ♕xd4 ♗e6 14 ♘f2 ♕b6 15 c4 ♗e6 with equal chances, Steinitz-Zukertort, 4th match game,

London 1872.

b) 8 ... ♘xd5 9 ♘xg4 0-0 10 c3 ♖e8+ 11 ♔f1 and Black's position is preferable.
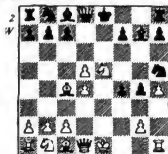
E221 9 ♘c3
F222 9 0-0

On 9 ♗xf4 ♘xf4 10 0-0 ♘g6 11 ♘xf7 ♕xh4 12 ♕e2+ ♕e7 13 ♗xh8 there is Schlechter's 13 ... ♕xe2 14 ♗xe2 ♖xd4+ followed by ... ♗xh8 and Black stands better.

E221

9	♘c3	0-0
10	♘e2	c5
11	♘xf4!	

There are two alternatives:

a) Bilguer recommends 11 ♗xf4 cd 12 ♕d2! ♘xf4 13 ♕xf4 ♕c7 14 ♘c6 ♕xf4 15 ♘e7+ ♔h8 16 ♘xf4 with a slight advantage to White. Keres suggests 11 ... ♘d7 as an improvement.

b) 11 c3 cd 12 cd ♘d7! with advantage for Black is Steinitz-Zukertort, Vienna 1882.

11	...	♘g3
12	♘c6	♗xe6

12 ... fe, as in Sankovsky-Heuer,

Tallinn 1970, should also be considered. After 13 de ♔h8 14 ♗g5 ♕a5+ 15 ♕d2 ♕xd2+ 16 ♔xd2 ♘xh1 17 ♖xh1 White went on to win. Instead of 16 ... ♘xh1, 16 ... ♘e4+ (Keres) is a better way of testing White's sacrifice.

13	de	♘xh1
14	♕g4	♕xd4

15 ef+ ♔h8 16 ♕xd4 cd 17 ♗f4. Now, not 17 ... ♘c6 (Blackburne-Paulsen, Vienna 1873) 18 ♘xc5 bc 19 ♗e2?! (Glaskov), but 17 ... ♖e8! (Keres).

F222

9	0-0	♕xh4
10	♕e1	♕xe1
11	♖xe1	0-0
12	♘e3	

Considerably stronger than the old 12 c3 ♖e8 13 ♘a3 ♘d7 14 ♘d3 ♖xe1+ 15 ♘xe1 ♗b6 16 ♘b3 ♗f5 17 ♗b5 ♖e8 (Leonhardt).

The threat is 13 ♘b5.

12	...	♘d7

On 12 ... c5 there might follow 13 ♘b5 ♘d7 14 ♘c7 ♖b8 15 d6 (Glaskov).

13	♘b5	c6
14	♘c7	cd
15	♘xd5	

Better than 15 ♘xa8?, R Byrne-Keres, USA v USSR, 1955.

15	...	♖b8
16	c3	

with the unpleasant threat of 17 ♘xf7 (Glaskov). It is not easy to meet the threat:

a) 16 ... ♘xe5 17 de ♔h8 18 ♗d2

Column 1

♗f5 19 c4 with the further 20 ♗b4 and 21 ♗d6; or even simply 18 b3 with the same idea.

b) 16 ... ♘df6 when the attack on f7 brings White nothing:

b1) 17 ♗b3? ♗f5 18 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 19 ♖e7 ♗g6 with a clear advantage to Black.

b2) But simply 17 ♘d3 wins back the pawn with good prospects in the endgame.

c) 16 ... ♗e5! (Keres) 17 de ♘c5 when it is up to White to prove that his space advantage is worth a pawn.

E23

7 ♘c3!

A very playable continuation. Recommended by Petroff, it gives White an excellent game.

7 ...   d6

Worse is 7 ... d5? when in Lutikov-Shakh-Zade, Tashkent 1950, there followed 8 ♗xf4 ♘xe4 9 ♘xe4 de 10 ♗c4 0-0 11 c3 ♗d7 12 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 13 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 14 ♕b3+ ♔e7 15 0-0-0 ♘f6 16 d5 ♗d7 17 d6 ♗e6 18 dc etc.

8   ♘d3

Incorrect is the sacrifice 8 ♘xf7 ♔xf7 9 ♗c4+ d5! 10 ♗xd5 ♘xd5 11 ♗xd5+ ♔e8 12 ♗xf4 c6 13 ♗b3 ♖xd4 14 ♕e2 ♖f8 (Bilguer 1916) 15 c3 ♕c5.

8   ...   0-0

After 8 ... ♘h5 (Paulsen) Euwe recommends 9 ♘xf4 ♘g3 10 ♖g2 0-0 11 ♗e2 ♕xe2 12 ♔cxe2 f5 13 c3 fe 14 ♕b3+ with advantage to

Column 2

White.

9   ♘xf4

Not 9 ♗xf4 ♘c6 10 ♘f2 ♘h5 11 ♗g5 f6 12 ♗e3 ♘g3 13 ♖h2 f5 with the better game for Black (Levenfish).

9   ...   ♘xe4
10   ♘xe4   ♖e8
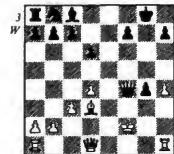**11   ♔f2   ♖xe4**
12   c3   ♕f6

Black is preparing an exchange sacrifice. If he retreats his rook White will get a strong attack.

13   g3   ♗h6
14   ♗d3   ♗xf4
15   ♗xf4   ♖xf4+
16   gf   ♕xf4+ (3)

In this position it used to be assumed that White stood worse because Bilguer's (1880) 17 ♔g2?? is answered by 17 ... b5. Rubinstein however, found the following line for White.

17   ♔e2!   g3
18   ♕d2!

and now:

a) 18 ... ♕f2+ 19 ♔d1 g2 20 ♕g5+ and 21 ♖e1.

b) 18 ... ♗g4+ 19 ♔e1 g2 20 ♕xg2

Column 3

♘c6 21 ♗e2 ♖e8 22 ♖f1 with the exchange of queens.

White's advantage is indisputable in both variations.

F

5   ...   ♘f6

The so-called Berlin Defence is, along with the Paulsen Defence (5 ... ♗g7), one of the most reliable defences in the Kieseritsky Gambit.

F1 6 ♘xg4
F2 6 d4
F3 6 ♗c4

F1

6   ♘xg4   ♘xe4!

Weaker is 6 ... d5 7 ♘xf6+ ♕xf6 8 ♕e2 ♗d6 9 ♘c3 with a good game for White.

7   ♕e2

Or 7 d3 ♘g3 8 ♗xf4 ♘xh1 9 ♕e2+ ♕e7 10 ♘f6+ ♔d8 11 ♗xc7+ ♔xc7 12 ♘d5+ ♔d8 13 ♘xe7 ♖xe7 and Black has more than enough compensation for the queen, Morphy-Anderssen, 13th match game, Paris 1858.

7   ...   ♕e7
8   ♘e3   ♘g3
9   ♕e7+

No better is 9 ♘d5 ♗xe2 10 ♘xe7 ♔xe7 11 ♗d5 ♘xh1 12 ♘xc7+ ♔d8 13 ♘xa8 ♗g7 with advantage to Black (Cordel).

9   ...   ♔xe7
10   ♖h2

Or 10 ♖g1 ♗c5 11 ♘f2 ♘c6 12 ♘d5 0-0 13 ♘xc7 ♘b4 14 ♗d3 d5 (Leonhardt).

Column 4

10   ...   d5
11   ♘e5   c6

12 d4 ♘f5 13 ♘f3 ♗d6. Black stands better (Bilguer 1880).

F2

6   d4   d6

For 6 ... ♗g7 see E2.

7   ♘d3

7 ♘xf7? looks dubious: 7 ... ♔xf7 8 ♗xf4 (8 ♗c4+ d5 9 ed ♗d6) 8 ... ♗g7 9 ♗xa4+ d5 10 ed ♖e8+ (Leonhardt 1908).

7   ...   ♘xe4
8   ♗xf4

And now:

F21 8 ... ♗g7
F22 8 ... ♕e7

F21

8   ...   ♗g7
9   ♘c3

Better 9 c3 0-0 10 ♘d2 ♖e8 11 ♗e2 ♖xe4+ 12 ♘f6 ♕f6 13 g3 ♗h6 14 ♕d2 (dangerous is the immediate 14 ♗g2 ♖xf4+ 15 gf ♗xf4) followed by 15 ♗g2, when White's chances are at least no worse than Black's.

9   ...   ♘xc3
10   bc   c5
11   ♗e2   cd
12   0-0   ♘c6

Bad for Black are:

a) 12 ... ♕xh4 13 g3!.

b) 12 ... dc 13 ♗xg4 ♗d4+ 14 ♘f2.

c) 12 ... h5 13 ♗g5! f6 14 ♗d2 f5 15 ♗g5 ♗f6 16 ♘f4!.

13   ♗g4   0-0
14   ♗xc8   ♖xc8

15 ♕g4 f5

Fischer considers the immediate 15 ... ♔h8 stronger, giving Black the better chances.

16 ♕g3 dc
17 ♖ae1 ♕d7

Better than 17 ... ♔h8? Spassky-Fischer, Mar del Plata 1960. *Editor's note:* This memorable game concluded: 18 ♔h1 ♖g8 19 ♗xd6 ♗f8 20 ♗e5+ ♘xe5 21 ♕xe5+ ♔g7 22 ♖d5 ♕xh4+ 23 ♔g1 ♕g4 (23 ... ♕g3!) 24 ♖f2 ♗e7 25 ♖e4 ♕g5 26 ♗d4! ♖f8! (26 ... ♗f8!) 27 ♖e5! ♖d8 28 ♗e4 ♕h4 29 ♖f4 1-0.

18 ♗xd6 ♖fe8

with a better game for Black.

F22

8 ... ♕e7
9 ♕e2

Not the only reply. Also perfectly playable is 9 ♗e2.

10 c3 (4)
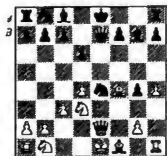
F221 10 ... h5
F222 10 ... ♗f5

Also:
a) 10 ... ♘c6 11 ♘d2 ♘xd2 12 ♘xd2 ♕xc2! 13 ♗xc2 h5 14 ♖ac. and White has secured some advantage, Schmidt-Bagchinsky, Prague 1943.
b) 10 ... ♘d7 11 g3 ♘df6 12 ♗g2 when White has a good game.

F221

10 ... h5
11 ♘d2

On 11 g3? Keres has improved on Philidor's 11 ... d5 with 11 ... h6.

11 ... ♘xd2

White's position is better after
a) 11 ... d5 12 ♘xe4 de 13 ♘e5, or
b) 11 ... f5 12 ♗g5 ♘xg5 13 ♕xe7+ ♔xe7 14 hg (Keres).

12 ... ♘xd2

Worth considering is 12 ♕xe7+!?.

12 ... ♕e2+
13 ♔xe2 ♘c6

After 13 ... ♗f5 14 ♖hf1 ♘d7 15 ♘b4 ♘f6 16 ♗b5+ ♔d7 17 ♖ae1+ ♔d8 18 ♗g5 White got a strong attack in Stolz-Sämisch, Swinemünde 1932.

14 ♖ae1 ♗e6

The chances are equal.

F222

10 ... ♗f5
11 ♘d2 ♘xd2

Chermisin-Neishtadt, Moscow 1958, went 11 ... ♘c6 12 0-0-0-0-0 and now, instead of 13 ♘xe4 ♕xe4 14 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 15 h5 ♗d5, White could have had a very promising position by means of 13 ♘f4!.

12 ♕xe7+ ♔xe7
13 ♔xd2 ♘c6
14 g3

In Keres' opinion, White has sufficient compensation for the pawn

F3

6 ♗c4

This move, which was very popular in the last century, is nowadays considered inferior to 6 d4.

6 ... d5

The text was introduced by Staunton. Unsatisfactory is 6 ... ♕e7? (Philidor) 7 d4 d6 and now:
a) 8 ♘xf7? ♕xe4+ 9 ♔f2 d5.
b) 8 ♘xf7+ ♔d8 9 ♗xf4 de 10 de+ ♔d7:
b1) 11 ♗d5? ♘xd5! (Bilguer 1880) 12 ♗g5 ♗c8 13 ♗xe7 ♘xe7 14 ♘c3 ♘bc3 15 ♘d5 ♘xe5 with an unclear position, Grazman-Shekhtman, Leningrad 1967.
b2) 11 ♗b3! is considerably stronger, e.g. 11 ... ♕b4+ 12 ♘d2 ♘xe4 13 c3 ♘xc3 14 ♗g5+ ♔e7 15 bc ♕c3 16 ♗xe7+ with a strong attack.

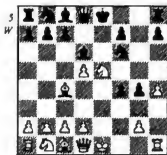**7 ed ♗d6 (5)**

F31 8 0-0?!
F32 8 d4

F31

8 0-0?!

This, the Rice Gambit, is dubious.

8 ... ♘xe5
9 ♖e1 ♕e7!

Also possible is 9 ... ♕f8.

10 c3 ♘h5!

After 10 ... ♕c5+? 11 d4 ♕xc4 12 ♘a3! ♗a6 13 ♖xe5+ and 14 ♗xf4 White gets a strong attack.

11 d4 ♘d7

White has an unsatisfactory position after 12 ♕xg4 ♘df6! (but not 12 ... ♘xd4+ 13 ♔f1 ♘g3+ 14 ♕xg3 fg 15 cd with sharp play) 13 ♕e2 ♘g4 14 ♕xe5 ♘xe5 15 ♖xe5 ♖g8 16 ♘d2 ♗h3 17 ♖f1 ♖d8 18 ♖xe7+ ♔xe7 19 ♘f2 ♗g4 20 ♗c4 ♘f6! 21 ♘f3 ♗xf3 22 gf Alapin-Burn, Barmen 1905, and now instead of 22 ... ♘h5? Black could have got an advantage with 22 ... ♘xd5.

12 ... ♘xe5
13 b3 0-0!
14 ♗a3 ♘f3+
15 gf ♕xh4
16 ♗e5 ♗f5

Black can force a draw at this point if he wishes by 16 ... ♕g3+ etc.

17 ♔d2 ♕g3+
18 ♔f1 ♕h2
19 ♗xf8 g3

20 &c5 g2+
21 &e1 g1&+

Here too after 21 ... &h4+ 22
&e2 &g3+ 23 &f2 &c4+ Black
can take perpetual check.

22 &xg1 &xg1+
23 &f1 &g3

with unclear play. Analysis by
Capablanca, Burn and Ed. Lasker.

F32

8 d4

F321 8 ... 0-0
F322 8 ... &h5!

F321

8 ... 0-0
9 0-0!

The weaker 9 &xf4? was played
in Pillsbury-Chigorin, Vienna 1903,
which continued 9 ... &a5 10 g3 f6
11 &d3 &xg3 12 &xg3 &xg3+ 13
&f1 &e8.

9 ... &h5
10 &xg4

A mistake would be 10 &xf4?
&xf4 11 &xf4 f6 12 &xg4+ &h8!
(Levenfish).

10 ... &xh4
11 &h2 &g3!

Stronger than Bilguer's (1916)
recommendation of 11 ... &e8 12
&f3 &f6 13 &c3 &g4 14 &e2 &d7
15 c3 &g3 16 &xg3 fg 17 &g5 &f3
18 &xf6 &xd1 19 &axd1 &xf6 20
&xf6 &e7 with a level game.

12 &e1 &d7

13 &d2 &d6 14 &d3 &h6! with
the threat of 15 ... &g4 giving the
advantage to Black.

F322

8 ... &h5!

This (Staunton's idea) is considered
the strongest.

9 0-0

Instead:
a) 9 &c3 &g3 is hardly good for
White; he is obliged to play 10
&xf4 &xh1 11 g3 with some
attacking chances, since after 10
&g1 &xh4 he still suffers material
losses, whilst 10 &h2? looks quite
hopeless.
b) Incorrect is the sacrifice 9
&xf4 &xf4 10 0-0 &g6 11 &xf7
&xh4 12 &xd6+ cd and Black will
transfer his king to c7.
c) 9 &xg4? lost very rapidly in
Kristiansson-Kolarov, Havana Ol
1966: 9 ... &g3 10 &h2 &e7+ 11 &f2
h5 0-1.
d) 9 &b5+ c6 10 dc bc 11 &xc6
&xc6 12 &xc6+ &f8 13 &xa8
&g3 with advantage to Black.
Rosanes-Anderssen, Breslau 1863.

9 ... &xh4
10 &e1 &xe1
11 &xe1 0-0
12 &d3

Not allowing the black queen's
bishop onto f5 and preparing
the advance c4.

12 ... &e8
13 &d2

The immediate 13 c4? does not
work because of 13 ... f6 14 &f3
&xe1+ 15 &xe1 c5! (Keres).

13 ... f6
14 &c4

The position is equal.

G

5 ... d6
6 &xg4

Incorrect is the knight sacrifice
6 &xf7? &xf7 7 &c4+ &e8 8 d4
&h6 9 &c3 &e7 10 &d3 c6 with
advantage to Black. Schlechter-
Maroczy, Vienna 1903.

6 ... h5

a) On 6 ... &f6 White has two
alternatives:
a1) 7 &xf6+ &xf6 8 &c3 c6 (8 ...
&e6 looks a better try) 9 &c2!?
(less clear is 9 d4 &g8! and White's
development is hindered. 10 &d3
is answered by 10 ... &g3) 9 ...
&g8 10 &f3 &h6 11 d4 &a6 (with
the manoeuvre ... &c7-e6 in mind
and preventing 12 &d3) 12 e5! de
13 &e4 &e7 14 0-0 with a good
attacking position.
a2) 7 &f2 &g8 8 d4 &h6 9 &c3
&e7 10 &d3 &g4 (10 ... &xe4? 11
&d5!) 11 &e2 &c2 12 &xe2 &c6
13 &xf4? (better 13 &xf4 or 13 e5)
13 ... &xd4 14 &f2 (6)
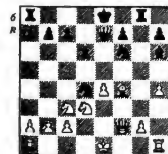
14 ... &xe4! 15 &xe4 &xe4+ 16
&d1 (16 &f1 &c2!) 17 &xc2
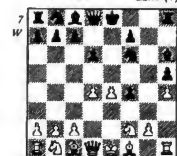&xg2! 18 &xg2 &xd3+ is better

for Black) 16 ... 0-0-0 17 &xh6
&xg2 18 &f1 &xc2 19 &c1 &g4+
0-1, Planinc-Korchnoi, Moscow
1975.
b) 6 ... &e7 7 d4 &xh4+ 8 &f2
&g5 9 &c3 &f6 10 &f3 &g5 11
&d2 &c6 12 &b5 &d7 13 &xc6
bc 14 0-0-0 0-0-0 Steinitz-Green,
London 1864, and now 15 &h3
is better for White.

7 &f2 &f6

Bad is 7 ... &e7 8 d4 &xh4 9
&xf4 (Levenfish).

8 d4 &h6 (7)

White's chances are better here
because of the weakness of Black's
pawn on f4, the defence of which
will be extremely difficult.

9 &c2

This forestalls the immediate
invasion of the black pieces and
prepares the way for pressure to
be put on the weak f-pawn.

The old manuals used to
recommend 9 &c3 &g4 10 &f3
&c3 11 &xe3 fe 12 &fd1 &g4 13
&g3 &f6 14 e5 de 15 &d5 with
advantage to White.

However, as Keres has pointed
out, after 14 ... &f4! 15 &xf4 &xf4

White cannot even achieve equality.

9 ... ♘c6
10 ♘c3 ♘g4

Otherwise 11 ♕d3, 12 ♗d2 and 13 0-0-0.

11 ♘xg4 ♗xg4

Or 11 ... hg 12 ♘d5 ♗g5 13 g3 suggested by Keres in an analogous position.

12 ♕d3

Black can do nothing to prevent 13 ♗d2, ♗c2 and 0-0-0.

H

5 ... h5

This variation, bearing the wondrous name of 'The Long Whip', does not give Black full equality.

6 ♗c4 ♗h7

This is the idea behind Black's last move.

On 6 ... ♘h6 there might follow 7 d4 d6 8 ♘d3 and Black is unable to defend his pawn on f4. Peev-Antanasov, Bulgaria 1954, continued 8 ... f3 9 gf gf 10 ♕xf3 ♗g4 11 ♕f2 ♕d7 12 ♘c3 c6 13 ♗g5 ♘a6 14 ♔d2 ♗g7 15 ♖af1 0-0 16 ♕e3, with an overwhelming advantage for White.

7 d4 d6 (8)

After other continuations White's attack on f7 can have a decisive influence on the outcome of the game, e.g.:

a) 7 ... ♗h6 8 ♘c3 ♘c6 9 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 10 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 11 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 12 0-0 ♗xh4 13 ♖xf4+ ♔g7 14 ♕d2 d6 15 ♖af1 ♖d8 16 ♘d5 ♗d7 17 e5 de 18 de ♗c6 19 e6 ♗xd5 20 ♖f7+ ♘xf7 21 ♖xf7+ ♔h8 22 ♕c3+ ♔g8 23 ♖xf6 ♕xf6 24 ♕xf6+ ♔h7 25 ♕f5+ ♔h6 26 ♕xd5 ♔g6 27 ♕d7 1-0, Bronstein-Dubinin, 15th USSR Ch, Leningrad 1947.

b) 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗xf4 ♗xh4+ 9 g3 ♗g5 10 ♗xh5! ♖xh5 11 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 12 ♗xh5 ♗xf4 13 ♘g6+ ♗g7 14 ♘xf4 ♘f6 15 ♘c3 ♕e7 16 ♘fd5 ♘xd5 17 ♕xg4+ ♔h8 18 ♘xd5. White has a won position (Jaenisch).

c) 7 ... ♕f6 8 0-0 ♗h6 9 ♘c3 d6 10 ♘d5 ♕d8 11 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 12 ♘xf4 with a very strong attack (Keres).

8 ♘d3

Keres, not without justification, recommends in this position 8 ♘xf7 ♔xf7 9 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 10 ♗xf4 as played in Stanley-Fraser, London 1837, considering White's attack difficult to meet.

8 ... f3
9 gf ♗e7

10 ♗e3 ♗xh4+ 11 ♔d2 gf 12 ♕xf3 ♗g4 13 ♕f4 ♖g7 14 ♘c3 ♗g5 15 ♕f2 ♘d7 16 ♖af1 ♗xe3+ 17 ♕xe3 ♘b6 18 ♗b3 ♕e7 19 e5 de 20 ♘xe5. White stands better (analysis by Jaenisch).

2 The Allgaier Gambit

1	e4 e5
2	f4 ef
3	♘f3 g5
4	h4 g4
5	♘g5

The Viennese master Allgaier published detailed analysis of this continuation, which had been well known for a long time, in 1819.

The basic aim of White's last move is not to give Black the chance of attacking the knight with the central d-pawn, but to leave him only with the possibility of attacking it with the b-pawn which inevitably means a waste of time for Black. At the same time of course, White will be forced to sacrifice his knight on f7, getting in return for it one or two pawns and quite a strong attack which in normal conditions, with limited time for thinking, is not easy to repel. Nonetheless modern analysis shows that with accurate defence Black does beat off the attack whilst maintaining his superiority in material.

A 5 ... d5
B 5 ... h6
C 5 ... ♘f6

A

5 ... d5

(Ponziani). Illogical, since with his next move White frees a square for his knight to retreat, thus making it not so easy for Black to achieve equality.

6 ed ♘f6

An idea of the Moscow player Selivanevsky. (The move was also suggested by Ponziani – ed.)

Alternatives are:

a) 6 ... ♘h6 7 ♘c4 ♗e7 8 ♕e2 ♗xh4+ 9 ♘f2+ ♔f8 (if 9 ... ♗e7 10 ♘xg4) with advantage to White, Mlotkowski-Perry, 1920.

b) 6 ... ♗e7 7 ♗b5+ c6 8 dc bc 9 ♗c4 (Cordel); or 8 ... ♘xc6 9 ♕e2 – in both cases with a difficult position for Black.

Now White has.
A1 7 Bb5+
A2 7 Nc3!

A1

7 Bb5+ c6
8 dc Nxc6
9 Nc3 Be7

10 d4 h6 11 h5 hg 12 dc Qxd1-13 Kxd1 Kf8 14 g3 Bc5 with a considerable advantage to Black, Dykhne - Schivanevsky, Moscow 1959.

A2

7 Nc3!

As Keres correctly points out, this is stronger for White.

8 ... Be7
8 d4

Or 8 Bc4 h6 9 Nxf7! Kxf7 10 d6+.

8 ... h6
9 Nxf7 Kxf7
10 Bxf4

with a very strong attack. Black has not had time to carry out the important defensive manoeuvre ... f3, blocking the f-file.
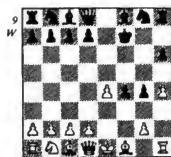
B

5 ... h6
6 Nxf7 Kxf7 (9)
B1 7 Qxg4?
B2 7 d4
B3 7 Bc4+

B1

7 Qxg4?

White wins a pawn but loses the

initiative, ending up finally in a lost position.

7 ... Nf6!
8 Qxf4

No better is 8 Bc4+ d5 9 Qxf4 Bd6 10 Bxc5+ Kg7 11 Qf3 Nxd5 12 ed Qe8+ 13 Qe3 Bg3-Stuttgart-Nymwegen, corres 1855.

8 ... Bd6
9 Qf3 Nc6

10 c3 Ne5 11 Qf2 Neg4 12 Qf3 Qe7 13 d3 Qe5.

B2

7 d4 f3!

Black cannot, it is essential to note, afford to spurn this advance.
A very risky reply for him would be 7 ... d5?8 Bxf4 and now:
a) 8 ... de 9 Bc4+ Kg7 10 Bc5+ Nf6 11 0-0 Be7 12 d5 Kh7 13 Qe2 Re8? and in the game Leonhardt-Flamberg, Abbazia 1912, White could now have won by 14 d6! cd 15 Rxf6 Bxf6 16 Qxe4+ Kg7 17 h5.
b) 8 ... Nf6 9 Nc3! Bb4 10 Be2 Bxc3+ (worse is 10 ... Be6 11 0-0 Bxc3 12 Bc5!) 11 bc Ne2 Qd2 Kg6 13 0-0 Be6 14 e4 c6 15 Rab1

b6 16 Rf2 Nbd7 17 Bd6 Ne8 18 Qf4! Fahndrich & Schlechter v. Fleissig & Marco, consultation game, Vienna 1903.

8 Bc4+

transposing to B3.

B3

7 Bc4+ d5
8 Bxd5+

Black has two retreats:
B31 8 ... Kg7?!
B32 8 ... Ke8

B31

8 ... Kg7?!
9 d4

Inadequate is 9 Bxb7? Bxb7 10 Qxg4+ Kf7 11 Qh5+ Ke7 12 Qe5+ Kd7 13 Qxh8 (White does not get perpetual check after 13 Qf5+ Kc6 14 Qh3, though only because of 14 ... a5 presenting the black king with a haven on a7) 13 ... Nf6 14 e5 Bxg2 15 Rg1 f3 16 Qxf3 Qxf6 17 ef Bc5 (Levenfish), also (Freeborough and Ranken, 1910).

9 ... f3!

Staunton's recommendation of 1860. It is considerably stronger than 9 ... Qf6 (Zukertort) 10 e5 Qg6 11 h5 Qf5 12 Nc3! Bb4 13 0-0 f3 14 Ne4 Qxh5 15 Ng3 Qh4 16 Rxf3 gf 17 Qxf3 Nf6 18 cf! ef 19 Bf4! Na6 20 Qe4 Qg4 21 Bxb7 Rxb7 22 Qxh6+ and White has a won position, Spielmann-Eljaschoff, Munich (Club Tourney) 1903.

10 gf Nf6!
11 Ne3

Keres considers 11 Bb3 Nc6 12 c3 stronger. Nonetheless, White's position does not inspire confidence after, say, 12 ... Qd6 13 e5 Nxe5 14 de Qxe5+.

11 ... Bb4
12 Bc4

a) 12 Bb3 and now:
a1) 12 ... c5 13 d5 Nbd7;
a2) 12 ... Nc6 13 Be3 Na5 (Bilguer 1916).
b) If 12 Bf4, 12 ... Nxd5 13 ed Nd7 is very strong (Levenfish).

12 ... gf
13 Rg1+ Kf8
14 Qxf3 Qh4+
15 Bg3 Rf8
16 Bf4 Be7!

In the consultation game Marco-Schlechter, Vienna 1903, the weaker 16 ... Qf6 17 Rxg4+ Kh7 18 Bg8+ Kh8 was played and the game ended in a draw.
With 16 ... Be7 (Schlechter's recommended improvement) Black prevents White from castling because of 17 ... Rxf4, and in view of the threat of 17 ... Bg5, which White has difficulty in countering, Black obtains a big advantage.
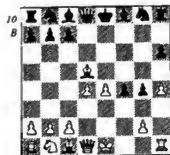
B32

8 ... Ke8

Although many theoreticians consider this retreat stronger than 8 ... Kg7, the fact is that with the black king in the centre White has greater chances of creating an

attack against it.

9 d4 *(10)*

B321 9 ... ♘f6?
B322 9 ... f3!

B321

9 ... ♘f6?

This move, which used to be the generally accepted one, allows White to build up an attack against the enemy king, although even then Black has sufficient defensive resources.

10 ♘c3   ♗b4

Marco-Chigorin, Vienna 1903, went 10 ... ♗g7 11 ♗xf4 ♘h5 12 ♗e3 c6 13 ♗b3 ♕g3 14 ♖g1 ♖f8 15 ♕d3 ♘a6 16 0-0-0 ♕e7 17 ♖ge1 ♗d7 18 ♕d2 ♖d8 19 e5 ♗e6 20 ♗xh6 ♗xh6 21 ♕xh6 ♗xb3 22 ab ♕f7 23 ♘e4 ♘xe4 24 ♖xe4 ♕f5 25 g3 ♘b4! and in the end Black drew.

11 ♗xf4   ♘xd5
12 ed   ♕xd5
13 0-0   ♗xc3
14 bc   ♗e6 *(11)*

This position was reached in Mieses-Pillsbury, Vienna 1903,
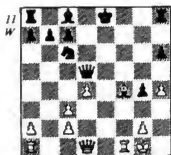
which continued as follows: 15 ♕d2 ♗e6 16 ♖ae1 ♔d7 17 c4 (17 ♗e5 and if 17 ... ♖h7 then 18 ♖f6 h5 19 ♗xc7 – Chigorin, *Novoe Vremya* 1904 – ed.) 17 ... ♕xc4 18 ♖xe6 ♔xe6 19 d5+ ♔d7 20 dc+ ♔xc6 21 ♗e5 ♖he8 22 ♖f4 ♕c5+ 23 ♗d4 ♕d6 24 ♖f6 ♖e6 25 ♕c3+ ♔d7 26 ♖f7+ ♖e7 27 ♗c5 ♖xf7 28 ♗xd6 cd 29 ♕b3 with roughly equal chances.

Keres mistakenly thought the diagram position won for White after 15 c4 ♕xc4? 16 d5 ♘e7 17 d6 cd 18 ♕xd6 with a very strong attack. However, after 15 ... ♕xd4+ 16 ♕xd4 ♘xd4 17 ♗e5 ♘c2+ 18 ♔f2 ♖h7 19 ♖fe1 ♗c6 White will have to work hard to draw.

B322

9 ...   f3!
10 gf   ♘f6
11 ♘c3   ♗b4
12 ♗b3

Keres' recommendation.

The normal 12 0-0 ♗xc3 13 bc ♘xc3 14 ed ♕xd5 15 ♖e1+ ♔d8

16 gf is quite joyless for White.

12 ...   ♘c6
13 ♗e3   gf
14 ♕d3

In Keres' opinion, White has great attacking chances.

C

5 ...   ♘f6

This defence, analysed in detail by Schlechter, was for a long time extremely popular. However, from the point of view of modern theory, Black can hardly hope to achieve results more favourable than those of the variations already given.

6 e5   ♕e7
7 ♕e2!

The strongest move, maintaining the attack for White. Weaker is 7 d4 h6 8 ♘xf7 ♔xf7 9 ♗xf4 d6 10 ♗e2 de 11 ♗xe5 ♘bd7 12 ♗xc7 ♕e8 Gunsberg-Teichmann, Vienna 1903

7 ...   ♘h5
8 ♘c3

Apart from this move, also worthy of attention is the sharp continuation 8 ♕xg4!? and now: a) 8 ... ♘g3 9 ♕xf4 ♘xh1 10 ♘c3. b) 8 ... ♕xe5! 9 ♗e2 ♘g3 10 d4, with strong threats in both cases.

8 ...   ♘g3
9 ♕e2!

White can get an equal game by means of 9 ♕d5 ♘xe5 10 ♘xe7 ♗xe7 11 ♗xe2. With the text

move he strives for more.

9 ...   ♘xh1
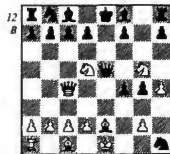
Or 9 ... ♕xe5+ 10 ♗e2 and now: a) 10 ... ♘xh1? gives White a winning attack after 11 ♗xf7+ ♔d8 12 d4 ♕g7 13 ♗xf4 ♕xf7 14 ♗xf7+ etc. (Collijn's *Lärobok*, 1921). b) 10 ... d5! 11 ♘xe2 ♘xe2 12 ♕xe2 equal game.

10 ♕d5

Also possible is 10 d4 h6 11 ♘d5 hg 12 ♘xc7+ ♔d8 13 ♘c5, or 12 ♘xe7 ♗xe7 13 d5, with a complicated, not disadvantageous game for White (Keres).

10 ...   ♕xe5+
11 ♗e2 *(12)*

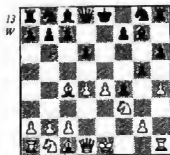White has a strong attack for the sacrificed rook, e.g.:
a) 11 ... f3? 12 ♘xc7+ ♔e7 13 ♘d5+ and wins;
b) 11 ... ♘a6 12 d4 ♕d6 13 ♗xf4 ♕c6 14 ♕b3 with multiple threats;
c) 11 ... d6 12 ♘c7+ ♕xc7 13 ♕xf7+ ♔d8 14 ♕f6+ ♔e8 15 ♗xg4 ♘g3 16 ♕xh8 d6, and White's game is preferable.

3 The Philidor Gambit

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	g5
4	♗c4	♗g7
5	h4	h6
6	d4	d6 *(13)*

This position and the continuation 7 c3 ♘c6 8 hg hg 9 ♖xh8 ♗xh8 10 ♕e2 occurred in the ninth game of the fourth match (game 55, 1834) between Labourdonnais and Mac-Donnell. Philidor analysed this line and developed the attack 7 c3 c6?! 8 ♕e2 ♗c6 9 ♗xc6 fe 10 e5, which is why the whole variation has been given his name.

White, in the diagram, has three alternatives, of which the last is the most important:

A 7 ♘c3
B 7 ♕d3
C 7 c3

A

	7	♘c3	♘c6
	8	♘e2	♕e7
	9	♕d3	♗d7
	10	♗d2	0-0-0
	11	♗c3	

This variation is not rehabilitated by the improvement suggested by Keres, namely 11 0-0-0, because of 11 ... ♘f6! (but not 11 ... ♖e8 12 ♖de1 ♕xe4 13 ♕xe4 ♖xe4 hg with a good position for White) and now White cannot continue with the capture 12 hg because of 12 ... ♘xe4.

	11	...	♖e8
	12	d5	♘e5
	13	♘xe5	de
	14	0-0-0	♘f6

Anderssen-Neumann, 1866.

B

| | 7 | ♕d3 | |

With the threat of penetrating with the queen on the king-side. (An 1858 suggestion of the Hannover player G.Schultz.)

	7	...	♘c6
	8	hg	hg
	9	♖xh8	♗xh8
	10	e5	♗g7!
	11	♘c3	

Or 11 ♕h7 ♔f8 12 ♔h5 ♘h6 13 ♘xg5 ♗xg4 14 ♕h4 ♘xd4 (Levenfish)

	11	...	♘h6
	12	ed	cd

13 ♘d5 ♔f8 14 ♘xg5 ♕xg5 15 ♗xf4 ♕xh4+. White has no real compensation for his piece, Rosenthal-Neumann, 1869.

C

	7	c3	♘c6
	8	♕b3	

White has nothing else. On 8 0-0 there might follow 8 ... ♕e7, and after 9 ♕b3 we are back in the main variation. Whilst 8 hg hg 9 ♖xh8 ♗xh8 10 ♕e2 ♕e7 11 ♘a3 ♗g4 12 ♗d2 0-0-0 is clearly in Black's favour.

	8	...	♕e7
	9	0-0	

Bilguer assessed as better for Black the position arising after 9 hg hg 10 ♖xh8 ♗xh8 11 ♕b5 g4 12 ♘g5 a6 13 ♕xf7+ ♕xf7 e.g. 14 ♘xf7 ab 15 ♘xh8 ♘cc7 16 ♗xf4 ♔f8.

| | 9 | ... | ♘f6! |

Unanimously considered the strongest.

On 9 ... g4?! White has
a) 10 ♘e1? ♘xd4!
b) The piece sacrifice 10 ♗xf4 gf 11 ♖xf3 ♘f6, recommended by the old handbooks, is inadequate.
c) The retreat 10 ♘h2! however, casts doubt on Black's pawn advance, e.g.
c1) 10 ... f3 11 ♘xg4 ♗xg4 12 ♕xb7 or
c2) 10 ... ♕xh4 11 ♖xf4, both in White's favour.

	10	hg	hg
	11	♘xg5	♘xe4 *(14)*

The basic position of the variation. As will be evident from what follows, it is a completely unsatisfactory one for White and consequently the move order by which the Philidor Gambit is reached is no good for White.

It should be noted that 11 ... ♘xd4! is even stronger than the 'main' line:
a) 12 ♖d1 ♘e6 etc.
b) 12 ♗xf7+ ♔d8 13 cd (13 ♕d1 ♘xe4 14 ♕xe4 ♕xe4 15 ♖e1 ♕f5 16 ♗c4 ♕c5! wins for Black,

Kase-Lehikoinen, corres 1981) 13 ... ♘xe4 and now:

b1) 14 ♘f3 ♗xd4+ 15 ♘xd4 ♕h4

b2) 14 ♗xf4 ♗xd4+ 15 ♔e3 ♗xe3+ 16 ♕xe3 ♘xg5.

From the position in diagram 14 White has the following three possibilities:

C1 12 ♖e1

C2 12 ♘xe4

C3 12 ♘xf7

C1

　　12　♖e1?

Recommended by von Bilguer.

　　12　...　　♖h1+!

　　13　♔xh1　♘f2+

14 ♔h2 ♕xe1 15 ♘xf7+ (Bilguer 1916) 15 ... ♔d8 16 ♗xf4 ♘g4+ and Black has a decisive attack.

C2

　　12　♘xe4　　♕xe4

The piece sacrifice 12 ... ♘xd4? does not work because of 13 ♕d1 f3 14 ♗g5 ♕e5 15 ♘bd2! (Keres).

　　13　♗xf7+

Other possibilities are:

a) 13 ♗xf4 ♘xd4 14 ♕d1 ♗e6! (Ravinsky).

b) 13 ♖xf4 ♕e1+ 14 ♖f1 ♕h4 15 ♗xf7+ ♔d8 (Panov), in both cases with advantage to Black.

　　13　...　　♔d8

　　14　♗xf4　♘xd4

　　15　♗g5+　♔d7

16　♕d5　　♘e2+

17　♔f2　　♕g4

Not so good is 17 ... ♕xd5 18 ♗xd5 ♖h5 19 ♔xe2 ♖xg5 20 ♖f7+.

After the text move White must reconcile himself to the continuation 18 ♕d2 c6 19 ♕e6+ ♕xe6 20 ♗xe6+ ♔xe6 21 ♔xe2 with chances of equalising in the endgame.

C3

　　12　♘xf7　　♖h7!

This move makes it difficult for White to defend against the mating threats and is considerably stronger than the passive 12 ... ♖f8? recommended by all the books on theory, with the following possible lines:

a) 13 ♗xf4 ♘xd4 14 cd ♗xd4+ 15 ♔e3 ♘c5 16 ♗xd4 ♘xb3 17 ab and White stands better.

b) 13 ♘xf4 ♘g3 14 ♘a3 d5 15 ♗xd5 ♘e2+ 16 ♔f1 ♘xf4 17 ♗xf4 ♖xf7 18 ♗xf7+ ♕xf7+ 19 ♕xf7+ ♔xf7 20 ♘xc7 with three pawns for the piece.

Even worse is 13 ♗xf4 ♕h4 or 13 ♗d5 ♘g3.

　　13　...　　♘xd4!

　　14　♕d1　　♘g3

15 ♔f2 ♖h1 16 ♕d2 ♘e4+ 17 ♖xe4 ♕xe4 and Black wins.

4   The Hanstein Gambit

　　1　e4　　　e5

　　2　f4　　　ef

　　3　♘f3　　g5

Editor's note: Compare Chapter 8 and the variation A3 of Chapter 12.

　　4　♗c4　　d6

Editor's note: The original move order is 4 ... ♗g7 5 0-0 d6 6 d4 h6 as in Hanstein-von der Lasa, 1849, whence comes the line's name; it had previously been mentioned in, for example, George Walker's 1832 *New Treatise on Chess*. It is interesting to note that Morphy always chose 6 c3, twice meeting 6 ... ♘c6 in off-hand games against Anderssen in Paris 1858: 7 ♕b3 ♕e7 8 d4 ♘f6 (Anderssen's later 8 ... a6 was met by 9 ♘xg5!) 9 ♘xg5, and in 1863 a casual game Morphy-de Riviere, again in Paris, went (after 5 0-0) 5 ... h6 6 c3 d6 7 d4 ♕e7 8 h4 ♘g6 9 h5 ♕e7 10 g3 ♗g4 11 gf ♗xh5 12 fg ♕d7 13 ♘e5 ♕h3 14 ♕d3 ♕xd3

15 ♘xd3 hg 16 ♘a3 with an evenly balanced position.

Instead of striking at Black's pawn chain by means of either 4 h4! or 5 b4 White chooses another means of doing this, namely g3. This plan leads to a more favourable position for White than in the Philidor Gambit.

　　5　...　　　h6

5 ... g4? was played in Chigorin-Sellman, London 1883, when after 6 ♘g4 ♕h4+ 7 ♔f1 ♘c6 8 c3 ♗h6 9 ♘a3 a6 10 g3! fg 11 ♔g2 White had the advantage.

In Herter-Kapič, Zagreb 1955, White tried to attack Black's pawn chain even before castling by 6 g3. Play continued 6 ... g4 7 ♘h4 f3 8 ♗f4! – a very interesting idea! White is preparing a breakthrough in the centre and, with this aim in mind, he activates his QR in the quickest way possible.

　　6　　　　　g4

In spite of the fact that Black fails to find the best defence, the further course of the game is of definite interest: 8 ... ♘d7 9 ♕d3 ♕f6 10 ♘c3 c6 11 0-0-0 ♘b6 12 e5 de 13 de ♕e7 14 ♗xf7+! 1-0.

Black's play in Spassky-Portisch, Budapest 1967, was stronger: 6 ... ♘c6! 7 g1 (1his is a mistake. He should have transposed into the main variation by 7 0-0 ♗g7 8 c3 etc.) 7 ... g4 8 ♘g1 ♕h4+ 9 ♔f1 ♘f6 10 ♘c3 g3 11 ♘g2 gh 12 ♖xh2 ♖g8+ 13 ♔h1 ♕xh2+ (Keres with good reason considers 13 ... ♕g3! even stronger) 14 ♔xh2 ♘g4+ winning the exchange.

6   ...   ♗g7 (15)
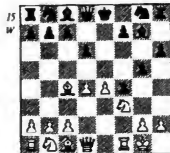
Now White has:
A 7 ♘c3
B 7 g3

After the generally accepted 7 c3?! Black can choose between 7 ... ♘c6! transposing to lines discussed in B, and 7 ... ♘e7!? (see Chapter 12, A3).

A

7   ♘c3

A1 7 ... ♘e7
A2 7 ... ♗e6!
A3 7 ... ♘c6!

A1

7   ...   ♘e7
This is weaker than A2.
8   g3   g4
Better is 8 ... ♘c6! (c.f. Chapter 12, A3, note to 7 g3!).
9   ♘h4   f3
10   ♘xf3   gf
11   ♗xf7+   ♔xf7
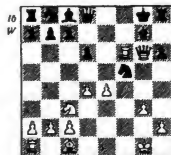12   ♕xf3+   ♔g8
13   ♕f7+   ♔h7
14   ♖f6   ♘f5
15   ♕g6+   ♔g8 (16)

In this position, which in A. Rabinovich's opinion should end in a draw by perpetual check, A. Andreyev has suggested 16 ♘d5! with an easy win, as these variations of his show:

a) 16 ... ♘d7 17 ♖xf5 and now:
a1) 17 ... ♘e5 18 de ♗xf5 19 ef with the threat of 20 f6.
a2) 17 ... c6 18 ♖f7.
b) 16 ... ♖h7 17 ef ♔h8 18 ♗e3.

A2

7   ...   ♗e6!
8   ♗xe6   fe
9   e5   ♘c6!
It is because of this possibility that the whole variation is thrown into doubt.
Considerably worse are:
a) 9 ... de 10 ♘xe5 ♗xe5 11 ♕h5+ ♔e7 12 de ♕d4+ 13 ♔h1 ♘c6 14 ♕g6 ♕xe5 15 ♗xf4! gf 16 ♖ae1 ♕g5 17 ♕xe6+ ♔f8 18 ♘d5 ♘d4 19 ♗xf4! ♘xe6 20 ♘xe6+ ♔e7 21 ♘g5+.
b) 9 ... d5 10 g3 g4 11 ♘h4 f3 12 ♕g6 ♖h7 13 ♕d3 (A.Rabinovich).

A3

7   ...   ♘c6!
Yet another excellent riposte. Marshall-Teichmann, Vienna 1905, continued 8 e5 de 9 ♖e1 ♗g4 10 ♗b5 ♘f8 11 ♗xc6 bc 12 b3 ♘e7 13 ♗a3 ♗g8 14 de ♕xd1 15 ♖axd1 ♕g6 16 ♘e4 ♗xf3 17 gf ♘xe5 18 ♕f2 ♔h7 19 ♗e7 ♔g6 with an advantage to Black.

B

7   g3
The most exact move order.
7   ...   ♘c6!
8   c3
Black can now choose between:
B1 8 ... ♗h3
B2 8 ... ♘f6
B3 8 ... g4

B1

8   ...   ♗h3
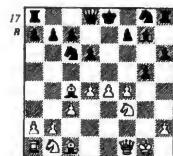
This win of the exchange leads to unclear play.
9   gf
White gets a lost position after 9 ♖f2! ♘f6 10 ♕c2 ♕d7 11 gf gf 12 ♔h1 0-0-0 13 ♗d3 d5 14 e5 ♘e4 15 ♗xe4 de 16 ♕xe4 ♗e5! Tringov-Vukčević, Leningrad 1960.
9   ...   ♗xf1
If 9 ... ♕d7 (Issler-Eggman, 1966) Korchnoi recommends 10 f5. Keres thinks that Black stands better after 10 ... ♗xf1 11 ♕xf1 ♘f6
10   ♕xf1 (17)

Practice shows that in the position in diagram 17 White has sufficient compensation for the exchange. For example:

10   ...   g4
Or 10 ... gf 11 ♗xf4 ♕f6 12 ♗g3 0-0-0 13 ♘bd2 ♘ge7 14 ♕h3+ ♔b8 15 ♖f1 ♕g6 16 ♘h4 ♕g5 17 ♘hf3 ♕g6 18 ♘h4 ♕h7?. Black should have settled for the draw. His ill-founded attempt to play for a win got him into a poor position after 19 b4 (also good was 19 ♗xf7 ♖hf8 20 ♕e6) 19 ... ♖df6 20

b5, Spielmann-Grünfeld, Carlsbad 1923.

11 ♘e1 f5
12 ♗e6!

Not, of course, 12 e5 d5 blocking up the position.

12 ... fe
13 ♕b5 ♘f6
14 ♕xh7 ♘e7

15 ♘d2 ♕b8 16 ♕a6 d5 17 ♕e2 ♕b6 18 ♖d3 ♖d8 19 ♘b3 Angelov-Atanasov, Porec 1970. In this position Black's extra exchange makes no impression at all. White prepared a knight sacrifice on e4 and won with an attack on Black's king.

B2

8 ... ♘f6!?

This interesting try was played in Heuer-Kärner, Tartu 1962.

9 gf g4
10 ♘fd2

10 e5? was played in the above-mentioned game, when Black obtained a very dangerous attack after 10 ... gf 11 ef ♕xf6 12 ♕xf3 ♘xd4 13 ♕e4+! ♔d8 14 cd ♖e8 15 ♕d3 ♗f5 16 ♕c3 ♕g6+ 17 ♔f2 ♕h5 18 ♗e3 c5.

10 ... d5
11 ed ♘xd5
12 ♕e2+

and if 12 ... ♕e7 13 ♘e4, whilst on 12 ... ♘ce7, 13 f5 is unpleasant.

B3

8 ... g4
9 ♘h4 f3

B31 10 ♕b3
B32 10 ♘d2

B31

10 ♕b3

This is the continuation to which Euwe gives preference. Keres mentions 10 ♗f4 ♗f6 11 ♘d2 ♗xh4 12 gh ♕xh4 13 e5 as being worthy of attention but with no further analysis. After 10 ♕b3 Black has:

B311 10 ... ♕e7?!
B312 10 ... ♕d7!

B311

10 ... ♕e7?!

Euwe gives this line.

B3111 11 ♘f5
B3112 11 ♗f4!

B3111

11 ♘f5 ♗xf5
12 ♕xb7

Following Nimzowitsch's analysis. Inadequate is 12 ef 0-0-0 13 ♗xf7 ♕e2 14 ♕e6+ ♖d7! 15 ♖f2 ♕d1+ 16 ♖f1 ♕e2 17 ♘d2 ♘f6.

12 ... ♕xe4

Also possible is 12 ... ♖b8 13 ♕xc6+ ♗d7.

13 ♗b5 ♘ge7
14 ♕xa8+ ♔d7
15 ♕xb7

Now Black can force perpetual check by 15 ... ♗xd4+ 16 cd ♕xd4+ 17 ♖f2 ♕d1+ if he so wishes (Bilguer 1880).

B3112

11 ♗f4!

It is difficult for Black to find an adequate defence against this move.

11 ... ♘f6

11 ... ♗f6 12 ♘f5 or 12 ♘d2 is also insufficient for Black.

12 ♘d2 ♘h5
13 ♗e3 ♗f6
14 ♘dxf3! gf
15 ♖xf3

and White has good attacking chances.

B312

10 ... ♕d7!

Better than 10 ... ♕e7. Black threatens to take the pressure off f7 by playing 11 ... ♘a5.

11 ♘d2

Hardly better is 11 ♘f5 ♗f6 and Black will undermine the white knight's outpost on f5 with ... d5 and ... ♘e7.

11 ... ♘a5
12 ♕c2 ♘xe4
13 ♘xc4 ♘e7
14 ♘e3 ♕c6

Kaplan-Karpov, World Junior Ch (Stockholm 1969). Black has an excellent game.

B32

10 ♘d2

Spielmann's recommendation. The idea of the move is to open lines on the king-side with the help of a piece sacrifice.

Here Black can try:

B321 10 ... ♗f6
B322 10 ... ♘f6!

B321

10 ... ♗f6

This move, which is considered the best by all the books, is designed to force White to sacrifice a piece. White has two ways of doing this, as well as a move temporarily delaying the sacrifice:

B3211 11 ♕b3
B3212 11 ♘dxf3
B3213 11 ♘hxf3

B3211

11 ♕b3 ♗xh4

In view of what follows Black would do better to play 11 ... ♕d7! intending 12 ... ♘a5 (Keres).

12 ♗xf7+ ♔f8
13 ♗h5!

An improvement: on 13 gh ♕xh4 14 ♘xf3 gf 15 ♖xf3 when Black should be able to defend by 15 ... ♘f6! e.g. 16 ♗g6 ♘d8.

13 ... ♕e7
14 ♘xf3 gf
If 14 ... ♗f6 15 ♘h4.

15 gh

White has a powerful attack for the piece. Glaskov gives the following sample continuation: 15 ... ♕g7+ 16 ♗g5 hg 17 ♖xf3+ ♘f5 18 ♖af1 ♖h6 19 hg ♕xg5! 20 ♖g3 ♖xh5 21 ♖xf6+! winning.

B3212

11 ♘dxf3 gf
12 ♕xf3 ♗h3

13   ♖f2

No better is 13 ♕h5 ♕d7 14 ♖f4 0-0-0 15 ♘f3 ♘e5! 16 de de with a clear advantage to Black, Spassky-Ornstein, Nice Olympiad 1974.

13   ...   ♕d7
14   e5   ♗xh4!

and Black stands no worse after 15 ♗xf7+ ♔d8 16 e6 ♕e7 17 gh ♕xh4 18 ♘h5 ♘f5 19 ♖xf6 ♕xf6 20 ♖xf6 ♖g8+.

B3213

11   ♘hxf3   gf
12   ♕xf3   ♗e6

The simplest move.

a) 12 ... ♗h3 13 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 14 ♕h5+ and 15 ♕xh3.

b) 12 ... ♕e7 13 e5 ♗xe5! (Keres) when after 14 ♗xf7+ ♔d8 15 de ♘xe5 or 14 ♕xf7+ ♕xf7 15 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 16 de ♘xe5 Black stands well. 13 ... de is weaker. Black has a difficult defence after 14 ♘e4 ed 15 ♘xf6+ ♘xf6 16 ♕xf6 ♕xf6 17 ♖xf6 ♘e5 18 ♗d5.

13   ♗xe6   fe
14   e5   de
15   ♘e4   ed
16   ♘xf6+   ♘xf6
17   ♕xf6   ♕xf6
18   ♖xf6

According to Glaskov, White has a slight advantage in the endgame. This opinion however, is debatable. If he likes, Black can equalise the chances by playing 18 ... dc 19 bc h5 20 ♖xe6+ ♔d7 when the potential superiority of the bishop over the knight is balanced by the weakness of the White queen-side pawns.

B322

10   ...   ♘f6!

This simple developing move by Black shows up the dubious sides of 10 ♘d2 better than 10 ... ♗f6.

11   ♘f5

Or 11 ♕b3 and now:

a) 11 ... 0-0 and White does not have 12 ♕g6 because of 12 ... ♘a5.

b) 11 ... ♕e7 was played in Santasiere-Evans, Log Cabin 1950 and Black got considerably the better position after 12 ♘f5 ♗xf5 13 ♕xb7 0-0 14 ♕xc6 ♘xe4 15 ♘xc4 ♗xc4 16 ♕xc4 d5.

11   ...   ♗xf5
12   ef   0-0
13   ♗d3   d5

Heuer-Villard, Tallinn 1964, went 13 ... ♖e8 14 h3 h5 15 hg hg 16 ♗xf3! gf 17 ♕xf3 d5 18 ♗g5 ♔f8 19 g4 ♕d7 20 ♗h4 with a strong attack for White.

14   h3   h5
15   hg   hg
16   ♘xf3   gf
17   ♕xf3   ♘e4!

18 ♗xe4 de 19 ♕xe4 ♘xd4! This gives Black the better endgame, since the attempt to complicate matters by 20 f6 ♘xe6 21 ♕g4+ ♗g7 22 ♗h6 ♘xe6 23 ♖ac1 is met by 23 ... ♕d7 and it is not clear how White can continue his attack. If Black does not want to return the piece he can play 19 ... ♖e8 20 ♕g4 f6 and it is doubtful whether White has enough compensation for the sacrificed material.

5   The Muzio-Polerio Gambit

1   e4   e5
2   f4   ef
3   ♘f3   g5
4   ♗c4   g4
5   0-0 *(18)*

Should White, in reply to 3 ... g5, not take advantage of the chance to go in for the Kieseritzky Gambit with 4 h4!, then Black can obtain an excellent position by means of 4 ... g4, driving the white knight away with the intention of depriving White of the right to castle after 5 ... ♕h4+.

White can only thwart this plan at the cost of great material losses. The sharp attack which the knight sacrifice gives down the opened f-file defence, but a defence which, with accurate play, he can be justified in thinking will be successful.

Research had already been carried out on this line by Polerio at the beginning of the 17th century, but in numerous books on theory it is for some unknown reason called the Muzio Gambit.

Editor's note: What is in a name? The much-loved 'Muzio' was 'born' in 1813 (though the variation has been known since c. 1590 from the Boncompagni and the Leon Polerio manuscripts - hence the latter part of the line's present-day title), when J.H.Sarratt in his book *Damiano, Ruy Lopez and Salvio* committed a grave blunder in translating a passage from Salvio's work of 1634 in which the gambit was attributed to Sr. Mutio of Alessandro, a third-class player in the Naples Academy. (Source: *A History of Chess*, H.J.R.Murray, p.876.)
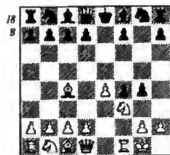
A   5 ... d5?!
B   5 ... gf

A

5   ...   d5?!

This intermediate move, delaying the acceptance of the sacrifice,

cannot be recommended, since White obtains two pawns for the piece without any slackening of his initiative.

A1 6 ed
A2 6 ♗xd5

A1

```
6  ed        gf
7  ♕xf3      ♗d6
8  d4
```
The alternative is 8 d3 ♘e7 9 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 10 ♕xf4 0-0 11 ♘c3 ♘g6 12 ♕g3 ♕d7 as in Schlechter-Marco, Vienna 1903, when White could have built up strong pressure with 13 ♖ae1 and 14 ♗e4.

```
8  ...       ♕f6
```
Or 8 ... ♘e7 9 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 10 ♕xf4 0-0 11 ♘c3 Reti-Freymann, Abbazia 1912.

```
9  ♕e4+      ♕e7
```
Or 9 ... ♘e7 10 ♗xf4 ♗f5 11 ♗xd6.

```
10 ♘c3       ♘d7
11 ♗xf4      ♕xe4
12 ♘xe4
```
Reti-Flamberg, Abbazia 1912.

A2

```
6  ♗xd5      gf
```
After 6 ... c6, which occurred in Duras-Flamberg, Abbazia 1912, White could have obtained a big advantage by 7 ♗xf7+! ♔xf7 8 ♘e5+ ♔e8 9 d4 f3 10 gf ♗g7 11 f4 (analysis by Marco).
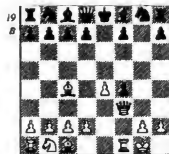
```
7  ♕xf3      ♘f6
8  ♕xf4      ♗e7
```
9 ♘c3 0-0 10 d3 c6 11 ♗b3 ♗e6 12 ♗d2 ♗xb3 13 ab and after the further ♖f3 and ♖af1 White had developed a strong attack in Auerbach-Spielmann, Abbazia 1912.

B

```
5  ...       gf
6  ♕xf3 (19)
```

And now:

B1 6 ... ♕e7
B2 6 ... ♕f6

6 ... ♗h6 does not give Black equality after 7 d4 ♕f6 8 c5 ♕f5 9 ♘c3 (Keres).

B1

```
6  ...       ♕e7
```

B11 7 ♕xf4
B12 7 d4

B11

```
7  ♕xf4      ♕c5+
```
The attempt by Black to achieve some advantage by 7 ... ♘c6 is refuted by an analysis of Schallop and Suhle: 8 ♗xf7+ ♔d8 9 ♘c3 ♕e5 10 ♕xe5 ♘xe5 11 d4 ♘xf7 12 ♖xf7 ♕e8 13 ♖xf8+ ♔xf8 14 ♗d5, with advantage to White, e.g.:

a) 14 ... c6 15 ♗c7 ♖b8 16 ♗f4 ♘f6 17 ♖f1 ♔e7 18 ♗g5 ♖f8 19 e5 ♔d8 20 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 21 ef (Bilguer);

b) 14 ... d6 15 ♗xc7 ♖b8 16 ♗f4 ♔e7 17 ♗b5 (Pachman);

c) 14 ... b6 15 ♗xc7 ♗b7 16 ♘a8 ♗xa8 17 ♗f4 (Euwe), and here, although Black is a piece up, the defence is fraught with difficulties after 17 ... ♘e7 18 d5!.

```
8  d4        ♕xd4+
9  ♗e3       ♕xc4
10 ♕xe5+     ♕e6
```
If 10 ... ♘e7, then 11 ♕xh8 ♘g6 (also bad is 11 ... ♕xe4 12 ♗h6 ♘g6 13 ♕g8 ♖c7 14 ♘c3 d5 15 ♖ae1 ♗e6 16 ♘xd5 ♕c5+ 17 ♔h1 ♕xd5 18 ♕xf7+) 12 ♕xh7 ♘e6 13 b3! ♕e6 14 ♘c3 and in view of the threat 15 ♗d5 White's position is better (Keres).

```
11 ♕xh8      ♕g6
12 ♕e8+      ♔e7
13 ♕xc7      ♘c6
14 ♕f4
```
This position offers chances for both sides.

B12

```
7  d4        ♘c6
8  ♘c3!
```
This is the strongest retort to Black's 6 ... ♕e7.

```
8  ...       ♘xd4
```
8 ... ♘e5 9 de ♕c5+ 10 ♔h1 ♕xc4 11 ♘d5 gives Black no relief (Romanovsky).

```
9  ♕d3       ♗e6
10 ♗d5
```
10 ♗xf4 is worthy of attention.

```
10 ...       ♕c5+
11 ♔h1       b5
```
If 11 ... ♗h6 12 ♗d2 ♕f8 13 ♖ad1 d6 14 ♗c3 f6 15 e5! fe 16 ♗xe5 de 17 ♘xc7+! etc.

```
12 ♗b3       ♗h6
13 ♗d2       ♕f8
```
Steinitz-Andersson, casual game, London 1862, when after 14 ♕c3 White had strong pressure.

B2

```
6  ...       ♕f6
```
The most logical. With this extra sacrifice of a pawn White opens up new lines for the attack.

A more restrained continuation, retaining the central pawn, is 7 d3, when the following is a possible line: 7 ... ♗h6 8 ♘c3 ♘e7 (or 8 ... ♘c6 9 ♘d5 ♕d4+ 10 ♗e3' ♕xb2 11 ♗xf4 ♘e5 Flamberg-Kleczinski, Warsaw 1899, when White could have obtained an attack good enough for the sacrificed piece with 12 ♕f2 according to Keres) and now:

a) 9 e5! transposing to the main variation after 9 ... ♕xe5 10 ♗d2.
b) 9 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 10 ♖xf4 ♕xf4 11 ♖xf4 f5! 12 cf c6 13 ♖e1 ♔d8 14 ♗f7 d5 15 f6 ♘g6 16 ♗xg6 hg 17 ♖e7 ♘d7 18 ♖g7 ♘f8 hands over the advantage to Black.

```
        7 ...        ♕xe5
B21  8 b3
B22  8 ♗xf7+
B23  8 d3
```

B21

```
        8 b3         d5
        9 ♗xd5       ♘e7
        10 ♗c4       ♘bc6
```

11 c3 ♗f5 12 d4 ♕e4 13 ♗e6 14 ♗xf4 0-0-0 and Black ought to be able to make good his material superiority without any difficulty – Tartakower-Leonhardt, Vienna 1908.

B22

```
        8 ♗xf7+
```

This second piece sacrifice is worthy of attention.

```
        8 ...        ♔xf7
        9 d4         ♕xd4+
```

On 9 ... ♕e7 a game Hartmann-Davier, Ellerman Memorial, corres 1981, continued 10 ♕h5+ ♔g7 11 ♗xf4 d6 12 ♘c3 ♘f6 13 ♕g5+ ♔f7 14 ♖ae1 ♕e6? 15 d5 ♖g8 16 ♕h4 ♔g7 17 ♖xe6 ♕f7 18 ♗g5 ♘bd7 19 ♖fxf6 1-0.

```
        10 ♗e3       ♕f6
        11 ♗xf4
```

Considerably stronger than the previously played 11 ♕h5+ ♔g6

12 ♖xf4 · ♘f6 13 ♖xf6+ ♔xf6 14 ♗d4+ ♔f7 15 ♕d5+ ♕e6 16 ♕f3+ ♔e8 with advantage to Black.

```
        11 ...        ♘e7!
```

An improvement over 11 ... ♗g7 12 ♘c3 ♘e7 13 ♘d5 ♘xd5 14 ♕xd5+ ♕e6 15 ♗d2+ ♔g8 16 ♖ae1! ♕xd5 17 ♖e8+ ♗f8 18 ♗h6 1-0, Smirnov-Tikhonov, USSR 1954.

```
        12 ♘c3       ♘f5
        13 ♘e4       ♕g6
        14 g4        ♗e7
        15 ♔h1       ♘h4
        16 ♕e3       ...
```

and now Black should play, according to Korchnoi, 16 ... ♔g8 17 ♗c5 b6! and ... ♗b7 with the better game.

B23

```
        8 d3         ♗b6
        9 ♘c3
```

Also possible is 9 ♗d2, which transposes back to the main variation after 9 ... ♘e7 10 ♘c3. Certain theoretical manuals consider 9 ... ♕xb2 a posibility for Black. However, after 10 ♘c3 White gets an unstoppable attack (Keres).

```
        9 ...        ♘e7
        10 ♗d2       ♘bc6
```

a) It is doubtful whether Black's position is defensible after 10 ... 0-0 e.g. 11 ♖ac1 ♕c5+ 12 ♔h1 and now:
a1) 12 ... c6 13 ♘e4 ♕f5 14 ♘c3 ♗g7 15 ♘d6 ♕g5 16 ♖xc3 ♗xc3 17 ♖xf7 etc.

a2) 12 ... ♘g6 13 ♘e4 ♕c6 14 ♕h5 ♔g7 15 ♘c3+ f6 16 ♘xf6 ♖xf6 17 ♖e7+ ♔f8 18 ♕xh6+ ♔xe7 19 ♕g7+ ♔e6 20 ♗xf6 etc. (Keres).
b) 10 ... c6 11 ♖ac1 ♕c5+ 12 ♔h1 d5 13 ♕h5 ♕d6 14 ♗xd5 cd 15 ♘b5! ♕b6 16 ♗b4 ♗bc6 17 ♘d6+ ♔d7 18 ♗a3 and White has a strong attack, Sämisch-Günther, consultation game 1926.

```
        11 ♖ae1       ♕f5
```

Suggested by Louis Paulsen.
The alternative, 11 ... ♕c5+, is considered weaker: 12 ♔h1 and now:
a) 12 ... ♘d4 13 ♕h3 ♗g5 (or 13 ... d5 14 ♕xh6 dc 15 ♕g7 ♖g8 16 ♘e4) 14 ♕h5 ♕f5 15 ♘e4 with an overwhelming position (Mosar).
b) 12 ... 0-0 13 ♗xf4 ♗g7 14 ♗e3 ♕d4 15 ♗xf7+ ♔h8 16 ♕e4 ♘ec6 17 ♘d5 ♕a5 18 c3 ♘e6 19 ♕f5 and White has a won position (Collijn 1921). However, Black's 14th move is obviously weak. After 14 ... ♕a5! the position becomes unclear.

```
        12 ♘d5
```

White's attack is inadequate after 12 ♖e4 0-0 13 ♗xf4 ♗g7 14 ♕e2 ♖f5 15 ♗d6 cd 16 ♖xf5 ♗xf5 (Zukertort).

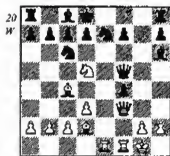```
        12 ...   ♔d8 (20)
B231 13 ♗c3
B232 13 ♕e2
```

**B231**

```
        13 ♗c3
```

As will be seen from the following variations, this move

gives Black no problems at all. He has a choice of three rook moves.
B2311 13 ... ♖g8
B2312 13 ... ♖f8
B2313 13 ... ♖e8
13 ... ♘xd5 14 ♕xd5 ♕xd5 15 ♗f6+ loses at once for Black.

B2311

```
        13 ...        ♖g8
        14 ♖xe7
```

Editor's note: An interesting piece of history is Karl Marx-Meyer, which went 14 ♗f6 ♗g5 15 ♗xg5 ♕xg5 16 ♘xf4 ♘ec5? d6 18 h4 ♕g4 19 ♘xf7 ♖f8 20 ♗h5 ♕g7 21 d4 ♘bc6 22 c3 a5 23 ♘e6+ ♗xe6 24 ♖xf8+ ♕xf8 25 ♕xe6 ♖a6 26 ♖f1 ♕g7 27 ♗g4 ♕g8 28 ♖f7 1-0.

```
        14 ...        ♘xe7
        15 ♗f6        ♖e8
        16 g4         ♕g6
        17 ♕e2        ♗f8
        18 g5         d6
```

Bilguer gives this final position as level, but this assessment can hardly be correct. How is White to continue the attack? On 19 ♖e1

there might follow 19 ... c6! 20
♘xe7 ♗xe7 21 ♗xe7+ ♔c7 22
♗xd6+ ♔xd6 23 ♕xe8 ♕xg5+ 24
♔h1 ♗h3 25 ♖c4 ♖e8 26 ♕d4+
♔c7 27 ♖g1 ♖e1! and Black wins.

White should play 19 ♘xf4
instead of 19 ♖c1? but even then
he probably does not have enough
compensation for Black's material
advantage.

Should White try instead 18
♖e1 instead of 18 g5 then after 18
... f3! 19 ♘xe7 ♕xg4+ 20 ♔h1
♕g2+! Black wins immediately.

B2312

13 ... ♖f8
14 g4

Inadequate is 14 ♘xe7 ♘xe5 15
♖e5 ♕g6 16 ♖fe1 ♗c6 17 ♕e2
♘xe5 18 ♕xe5 ♗g5 19 ♗xf7 as
Black has 19 ... d6!.

14 ... ♕g6
15 h4 ♕xd5

In the opinion of Panov, to
whom this analysis belongs, White
gets the better chances after 15 ...
d6 16 g5 ♘xd5 17 ♗xd5 ♗d7 18
♗f6+ ♔c8 19 h5 ♕g8 20 ♕xf4;
however, this still needs to be
proved in practice.

16 ♗xd5 f6
17 ♕e2 d6
18 ♗xc6 ♕xg4+
19 ♕xg4 ♗xg4
20 ♖xb7

with a good position for White
(Panov).

However, in this analysis, too,
Black's play can be improved.

upon. For example, instead of 17
... d6?, 17 ... ♘e5! changes radically
the final assessment, 18 g5 being
simply met by 18 ... ♗xg5!

B2313

13 ... ♖e8
14 ♗f6

After 14 ♗f6 ♖f8 15 g4 ♕g6 16
h4 (Anderssen-Zukertort, Breslau
1865) 16 ... d5 (recommended by
Zukertort, who played 16 ... d6 –
ed.) 17 ♗xd5 ♗xg4 18 ♕g4
♕xg4+ 19 ♘xg4 ♕g8 20 ♗f3 f5 21
♗f6 ♔d7 22 d4 fg Black wins.

White's best try is 14 ♕e2 ♕e6
(14 ... d6 15 ♘f6 ♖f8 16 g4 ♕g6 17
h4 with advantage to White –
Keene) 15 ♕f3 ♕f5 16 ♕e2 with a
draw by repetition, Keene-Pfleger,
Montilla 1974.

14 ... ♗g5
15 g4 ♕g6
16 ♗xg5 ♕xg5
17 h4 ♕xh4
18 ♕xf4 d6
19 ♘f6 ♖f8!

In Chigorin-Davidov, St. Peters-
burg 1874, 19 ... ♘e5 was played
and White won beautifully: 20
♖xe5 de 21 ♕xe5 ♗g4 22 ♕d4+
♔c8 23 ♗e6+! etc.

20 ♖e2 ♗f5!
21 gf ♕xf6

Black has a won position (A.
Rabinovich).

We can conclude that 13 ♗c3 is
inadequate. Black can move his
king's rook to any square without
danger of a loss and 13 ... ♖f8!

likely as not leads to the better
game for Black.

B232

13 ♕e2

This, Maclean's move, was
considered strongest in the position
by the old masters.

B2321 13 ... ♕e6
B2322 13 ... b5!

Other alternatives are weaker:

a) 13 ... ♖e8 14 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 15
♖xf4 ♕g5 16 ♖xf7 d6 17 ♘f6 ♘e5
18 ♘xe7 '7 19 ♗xf7 and White
is win   res).

b) 13 ... .5 14 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 15
♗c3 ♕c5+ 16 ♔h1 ♗g5 17 ♗xh8
♕f8 18 ♕h5 with advantage to
White (Levenfish), (also Bilguer
1916).

B2321

13 ... ♕e6

Maclean's basic variation.

14 ♕f2

Alternatives are less satisfactory:
a) 14 ♘xe7 ♕xe7?! (Keres' improve-
ment on rather unconvincing
analysis by Chigorin, who considered
that Black had better prospects
after 14 ... ♕xe2 15 ♘xe6+ bc 16
♖xe2 d5 17 ♗b3 ♗e6) when Keres
gives the following continuations
all favouring Black:
a1) 15 ♕h5 ♕g5 16 ♗xf7 ♖f8 with:
a11) 17 ♕xf8+ ♗xf8 18 ♗xf4 ♕g7
19 ♗g5+ ♔e7!;
a12) 17 ♗xf4 ♕c5+ 18 d4 ♕xd4+
19 ♔h1 ♖xf7 20 ♗xf7 d6! with
advantage to Black;
a2) 15 ♗c3 ♖e8 16 ♕f2 ♕g5 17

♗xf7 ♖f8 18 ♕xf4 ♕xf4 19 ♖xf4
♘e7!;
a3) 15 ♕g4 ♕g5 16 ♗c3 d5!;
a4) 15 ♕f2 ♕g5 16 ♗c4 f5 17 ♗xf4
♕xf4.
b) 14 ♕f3 ♕f5 15 ♗c3 ♖f8! trans-
poses to B2312.
c) 14 ♗c3 ♕xe2 15 ♖xe2 ♖g8:
c1) 16 ♗f6 ♗g5 17 ♘xe7 ♘xe7 18
♗g5 ♖xg5 19 ♗fe1 d5!;
c2) 16 ♘xf4 (not as bad as c1) 16 ...
d6 17 ♗xf7 ♖f8 18 ♘e6+ ♗xe6 19
♗xe6 ♖xf1+ and White cannot
hope to push home his attack with
so few pieces (Keres).

14 ... ♕f5

with a draw by repetition, for
Black in his turn cannot avoid the
draw without taking risks. If 14 ...
♕g4 15 h3 ♕g6 16 ♗xf4 favours
White (Znosko-Borovsky).

B2322

13 ... b5!
14 ♘xe7 ♕c5+
15 ♖f2 ♕xe7

White also has a dubious
position after 15 ... ♘xe7!.

16 ♕h5 ♕g5
17 ♕xf7 bc!

Far stronger than Berger's
recommendation in 1905: 17 ...
♕g6? 18 ♗f8 19 ♗f6+ ♖f8
20 ♖e8+ ♗xe8 21 ♕xf6+ ♖e7 and
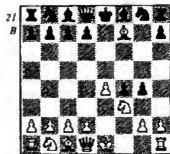White gives perpetual check.

18 ♗c3 ♖f8!
19 ♗f6+ ♕xf6
20 ♗f8+ ♖xe8 21 ♕xf6+ ♔e7 22
♕xh6 cd 23 cd ♖b8 24 ♕xh7 ♖b6
25 b3 ♘g6. Black's position is
clearly superior.

6 Other 5th Moves for White after 3 ... g5 4 ♗c4 g4

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	g5
4	♗c4	g4

A 5 ♗xf7+   Lolli Gambit
B 5 ♘c3   McDonnell Gambit
C 5 d4   Ghulam Kassim Gambit
D 5 ♘e5   Salvio Gambit

A

5 ♗xf7+ (21)

Mention is already made of this gambit by Greco and Polerio in the 17th century, but it was Lolli who analysed it in detail and thus it bears his name.
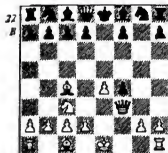
The bishop sacrifice is much weaker than the knight sacrifice and gives Black a good game.

5	...	♔xf7
6	♘e5+	♔e8
7	♕xg4	♘f6
8	♕xf4	d6
9	♘f3	

White's hopes crumble! After 9 0-0? de 10 ♕xe5+ ♔f7 11 ♕h5+ ♔g8 12 ♕g5+ ♗g7 Black wins.

| 9 | ... | ♕g8 |
| 10 | 0-0 | ♖g4 |

11 ♕e3 ♖xe4 12 ♕g5 ♘c6 13 ♘c3 ♖g4 14 ♕e3 ♔d7 and Black has a won position, analysis by Dr Schmid 1886.

B

| 5 | ♘c3 | gf |
| 6 | ♕xf3 (22) | |

B1 6 ... d5
B2 6 ... d6!

The kind of difficulties Black can land himself in with inaccurate play are illustrated by the following example: 6 ... ♗h6 7 d4 ♘e5 8 0-0 ♘xd4? 9 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 10 ♕h5+ ♔g7 11 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 12 ♖xf4 ♘f6 13 ♕g5+ ♔f7 14 ♖af1 and White has obtained a winning attack, McDonnell-Labourdonnais, 8th game of the 4th match, 1834.

B1

| 6 | ... | d5 |
| 7 | ♘xd5 | ♘c6 |

Schiffers recommended 7 ... ♗e6! whereupon Keres suggests the sacrifice of a second piece: 8 d4! c6 9 ♗xf4 cd 10 ed and 11 0-0.

8	0-0	♗d6
9	d4	♘xd4
10	♕h5	♗e6

11 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 12 ♘xf4 ♗xc4 13 ♕e5+ ♔f8 14 ♕xh8 ♗xf1 15 ♖xf1 ♕f6 16 ♕xh7 ♕xf4 with an approximately level game as in Charousek-Marco, Vienna 1897.

B2

| 6 | ... | d6! |
| 7 | 0-0 | |

Keres suggests 7 d4 as an improvement. After 7 ... ♗e6 White should play 8 d5! and 9 ♗xf4 with excellent compensation for the piece.

| 7 | ... | ♗e6 |
| 8 | ♘d5 | |

Or 8 ♗xe6 fe 9 ♕h5+ ♔d7 10 d4 ♕e7 11 ♗xf4 ♕g5+ ♔c8.
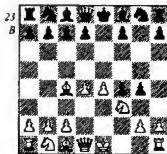
8	...	c6
9	♘c3	cd
10	♕xh8	

Black also beats off the attack after 10 ed ♘f6! 11 de fe 12 ♗xe6 ♘c6 13 d3 ♕b6+ 14 ♔h1 ♕d4.

| 11 | ♕xg8 | ♕b6+ |

12 ♔h1 ♘f6 13 ♘b3 ♕d4 Black stands better (analysis by J.Malkin, *Wiener Schachzeitung* 1911).

C

5 d4 (23)

Mention is made of this attack in an Indian book published in 1826. It gives Black less trouble

than the McDonnell Gambit.

Editor's note: This line made its appearance in Koch's *Elementarbuch* of 1828 and takes its name from Ghulam Kassim, a Madras player, who in collaboration with James Cochrane published *Analysis of the Muzio Gambit*, Madras 1829.

```
5  ...      gf
6  ♕xf3
```

On 6 ♗xf4 Black gets an excellent game by 6 ... d5! (6 ... fg? is dangerous because of 7 ♗xf7+) 7 ♗xd5 ♘f6.

```
6  ...      d5
```

Inferior is 6 ... d6 7 0-0 ♗c6 8 d5! ♗d7 9 ♗xf4 ♕e7 10 c5!.

```
7  ♗xd5    ♘f6
8  0-0     o6
9  ♗xf7+
```

No better is 9 ♘c3 cd 10 ed ♗g7 11 ♗xf4 0-0 12 ♗g5 ♗bd7 13 ♘e4 b5! 14 a4 ♗b7 15 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 16 ♗xf6 ♕xf6 17 ♕xf6 ♗xf6 18 ♖xf6 b4.

```
9  ...      ♗xf7
10  ♕xf4    ♗g7
11  e5      ♖f8
12  ef      ♗g8
```

The attack is repelled. Black wins.

D

```
5  ♘e5
```

With his last move White avoids the loss of material and even forces Black to sacrifice a rook in certain cases, if he is not to get the worse position. At the same time, however, Black succeeds in seizing the initiative and the attack which he develops against the white king, which can no longer castle, is so strong that the Salvio Gambit must be considered totally unacceptable for practical use.

```
5  ...      ♕h4+
6  ♔f1 (24)
```
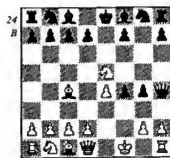

Black now has three possibilities which all lead to the advantage for him:

D1 6 ... f3
D2 6 ... ♘h6
D3 6 ... ♘c6!

D1

```
6  ...      f3
```

The Cochrane counter-attack. (This dates from 1822)

```
7  gf
```

Alternatives are no better:
a) 7 ♘xf7 ♘f6 8 ♘xh8 ♘xe4 9 ♕e1 fg+;
b) 7 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 8 g3 ♕h3+ 9 ♔f2 ♘f6 10 ♗b3 d6 11 ♗f7 ♘xe4+ 12 ♔e3 ♗f5 13 d3 ♗h6+;
c) 7 g3 ♕h3+ 8 ♔f2 ♘f6 9 ♘c3 ♕g2+ 10 ♔e3 ♘h6+ 11 ♔d3 ♘c6 12 ♘xc6 dc; with advantage to Black in all cases (Levenfish and Bilguer).

```
7  ...      ♘f6
8  ♘xg4    ♘xg4
9  fg       ♕h3+
10  ♔f2     ♘c6
```

with a strong attack according to Keres.

D2

```
6  ...      ♘h6
7  d4       f3!
8  g3
```

Or:
a) 8 gf gd6 9 ♘xg4 ♘xg4 10 fg ♗xg4 11 ♕d3 ♕h3+;
b) 8 ♗xh6 ♗xh6 9 gf gd6 10 ♘xg4 ♗xg4 11 fg ♕h3+ 12 ♔e1 ♘c6;
c) 8 ♘c3 d6 9 ♘d3 fg+ 10 ♗xg2 ♗g7 11 ♘f4 ♘c6 12 ♗e3 0-0 with advantage to Black (Keres and Levenfish).

```
8  ...      ♕h3+
```

Editor's note: Jaenisch in his *Analyse Nouvelle des Ouvertures du Jeu des Echecs*, Vol. II, Petersburg 1843, attributes this whole idea to Salvio (1604/1634).

```
9  ♔f2      ♕g2+
10  ♔e3     f5!
```

Black has a won position (Bird).

Editor's note: Both the 1880 edition of Bilguer and Staunton in his *Chess Player's Handbook*, attribute this to Silberschmidt.

D3

```
6  ...      ♘c6!
```

Herzfeld's continuation, recommended by Steinitz (*International Chess Magazine* 7, 1885) is the strongest.

```
7  ♘xf7
```

Alternatives are:
a) 7 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 8 ♘xc6+ dc
a1) 9 ♗b3 ♘f6 10 d3 ♘h5 11 ♕e1 g3! 12 ♘d2 ♗g4 13 h3 ♗h6 14 ♗g1 ♗g7 15 c3 f3 16 ♘xf3 ♗xf3 17 gf ♖af8 18 ♗g2 ♖xf3 and Black wins;
a2) 9 ♗xg8 ♖xg8 10 ♕e1 g3 11 d4 f3 12 h3 ♗g4 with a clear advantage to Black (Levenfish). (This was played in Dublin University v. Cambridge University, corres 1892 – ed.).
b) 7 d4 ♘xe5 8 de ♗c5 9 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 10 ♕e2 f3 11 gf ♕h3+ 12 ♔e1 gf with a clear advantage to Black (Levenfish), (also Bilguer 1916).

```
7  ...      ♗c5
8  ♕e1      g3
9  ♘xh8
```

No better is 9 c3 ♗f2 10 ♕d1 ♘f6 11 ♘xh8 d5 12 cd ♗g4 13 ♗e2 ♘e5 (Levenfish), (also Bilguer 1916).

```
9  ...      ♗f2
10  ♕d1     ♘f6
```

11 d4 d5 12 cd ♗g4 13 ♗e2 ♘xd4 and Black has a winning attack (analysis by Csank, *Chess Monthly* 1889).

7 The Quaade-Rosentreter Gambits

	1	e4	e5
	2	f4	ef
	3	♘f3	g5

A 4 ♘c3 Quaade Gambit
B 4 d4 Rosentreter Gambit

A

4 ♘c3

This continuation (named after a Dutchman, Captain Quaade), as well as the Rosentreter Gambit, cannot give White a comfortable game, if only because of the possibility for Black to transpose by 4 ... ♗g7! to favourable variations of the Philidor or Hanstein Gambit.
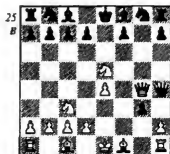
	4	...	g4
	5	♘e5	

For 5 ♗c4 see the McDonnell Gambit (p.34).

	5	...	♕h4+
	6	g3	fg
	7	♕xg4	fg (25)

This rook sacrifice is the idea of the gambit. Black now has:
A1 7 ... g2+?
A2 7 ... ♕xg4!

A1

	7	...	g2+?

Accepting the sacrifice gives White a winning attack.

	8	♕xh4	gh♕
	9	♗h3	♗d6

No better is 9 ... ♘h6 10 d4 d6 11 ♗xh6 de 12 0-0-0 (12 ♕xe5+ is also adequate) 12 ... ♗xh6+ 13 ♔xh6 ♕f3 14 ♘d5 (Bilguer 1916) 14 ... ♗g4 15 ♖b5+ c6 16 ♖f1 ♕h3 17 ♕f6 and White wins (Levenfish).

	10	♕xf7+	♔d8
	11	d4	♘e7

a) 11 ... c6 12 ♗g5+ ♔c7 13 ♕c4;
b) 11 ... ♕g1 12 ♘e2! ♕xh2 13 ♗g5+ ♘e7 14 ♕g7 winning.

| | 12 | ♗g5 | |

and White has a won position (Keres).

A2

	7	...	♕xg4!
	8	♘xg4	d5
	9	♗h3	de

10 ♘f6+ ♔d8 11 ♗xc8 ♔xc8 12 ♘fxe4 gh and although he is a pawn down White does not have the worst of it (Schmid 1884).

B

	4	d4	g4
	5	♘e5	♕h4+
	6	g3	fg
	7	♕xg4	

and now Black has a choice again between:
B1 7 ... g2+?
B2 7 ... ♕xg4!

B1

	7	...	g2+?

Winning the rook gives White a strong attack.

	8	♕xh4	gh♕
	9	♘e3!	

This is stronger than the continuation recommended by Rosentreter: 9 ♕h5 ♕xe4+ 10 ♗e2 ♗e7 11 ♕xf7+ ♔d8 12 ♗g5 c6 13 ♕f8+ ♗c7 14 ♗xe7 ♘xe7 15 ♕xh8 ♕h4+ with the better game for Black.

| | 9 | ... | d6! |

Inferior is 9 ... ♘c6 10 ♕h5 ♘xe5 11 ♕xe5+ ♘e7 12 ♕xh8 ♕xh2 13 ♗e3 ♕g3+ 14 ♔d2 ♕g7 15 ♕xg7 ♗xg7 16 ♘b5 ♔d8 17 ♗c4 a6 18 ♘c3 and White stands better (Schmid).

| | 10 | ♘xf7 | ♗e7 |

If Black takes the knight, 10 ... ♔xf7, he risks losing his queen after 11 ♕h5+ ♔g7 12 ♔f2!.

	11	♕h5	♘f6
	12	♘xd6+	♔d8

After 12 ... ♔d7 Black gets mated.

| | 13 | ♘f7+ | |

with perpetual check (Levenfish).

B2

| | 7 | ... | ♕xg4! |

This leads to advantage for Black.

	8	♘xg4	d5
	9	♘e3!	

Hardly consistent is Cordel's recommendation 9 ♘e5? f6 10 ♗f4 ♗g7 11 ed and White does not have sufficient compensation for the piece.

	9	...	de
	10	hg	♘c6

11 ♗b5 ♗g7 12 d5 a6 13 ♗a4 b5 14 dc ba and Black stands better (Schmid).

From the analysis given in the preceding chapters it will be seen that in answer to 3 ... g5 White has only one means of obtaining a completely equal game, and that is the Kieseritzky Gambit.

In those cases where White does not take advantage of this possibility Black gets the better position.

8 The Fischer Defence

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	d6

Old theoretical manuals are rather negative about this last move of Black but, as will be seen from what follows, it has become clear, thanks to the analyses of R.Fischer, that it is difficult for White to obtain an advantage. He is now deprived of the possibility of transposing into the Kieseritzky Gambit.

White's choice now lies between:
A 4 ♗c4
B 4 d3!?
C 4 d4

A

	4	♗c4	h6

Editor's note: Fischer, in his article 'A Bust to the King's Gambit' *American Chess Quarterly*, Vol. 1, No. 1, Summer 1961, said, 'This in conjunction with Black's previous move I would like to call the Berlin Defence Deferred'.

Now White has nothing better than to transpose into the Hanstein Gambit by 5 d4 g5 6 0-0.

The attempt to avoid this order of moves brought White nothing in Planinc-Tukmakov, Yugoslavia-USSR, Vrnjacka Banja 1965: 5 b4?! ♘f6 6 e5 de 7 ♘xe5 ♘d5 8 0-0 ♗e6 9 ♕e2 ♘c6 10 ♗b2 ♘xe5 11 ♗xe5 c6 12 ♘c3 with unclear prospects. It is possible that this idea can be improved upon by 5 b3. Bhend-Gosteli, 1969, continued 5 ... ♘c6 6 ♗b2 ♘f6 7 ♘c3 ♗e7 8 ♕e2 with chances for both sides.

B

	4	d3	g5
		5	h4	g4

B1 6 ♘d4
B2 6 ♘g1!

B1

	6	♘d4

This move is given by Bhend, with the following possibilities:
B11 6 ... ♗g7
B12 6 ... ♕f6
B13 6 ... ♗h6

B11

	6	...	♗g7
	7	c3	♕f6
	8	♕b3	♘e7

9 ♕b5+ ♘bc6 10 ♘xc6 ♘xc6 11 ♕g5 ♕xg5 12 hg f3 13 gf gf 14 ♘d2 ♗g4 15 ♔f2 with an equal game.

B12

	6	...	♕f6
	7	♘b5	♗a6
	8	♗d2	f3

9 ♗c3 ♕f4 10 ♗xh8 ♕g3+ 11 ♔d2 fg 12 ♗xg2 ♕xg2+ 13 ♔c3 with an unclear position.

B13

	6	...	♗h6
	7	♗d2	♘f6

8 h5 d5 9 e5 ♕e7 10 ♕e2 ♘fd7 11 ♘f5 ♕e6 12 ♘xh6 ♕xh6 13 g3 with advantage to White.

B2

	6	♘g1! *(26)*
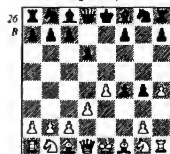
From the diagram Black has two main continuations:
B21 6 ... ♕f6
B22 6 ... ♗h6

B21

	6	...	♕f6
	7	♗d2	♘c6
	8	♘c3	♗ge7

Or 8 ... ♗e6 9 ♘d5 ♗xd5 10 ed ♕e5+ !! ♘e2 ♕xd5 12 ♘xf4 with good compensation for the pawn.
| | 9 | ♘h5 | ♔d8 |
| | 10 | ♘c3 | ♘e5 |
11 d4 ♘5c6 12 e5 ♕h6 13 ed cd 14 d5 ♘e5 15 ♕d2 White has an excellent position.

B22

	6	...	♗h6
	7	♗d2	

and now not 7 ... ♘f6 8 ♘c2 ♘h5 9 g3 which is good for White, but 7 ... ♘c6 8 ♘c3 ♗e6 9 ♘ge2 ♕f6 or 9 ♘ce2 ♕f6 10 ♘c3 ♘e5 11 d4 f3! which are better for Black.

C

	4	d4	g5

Also possible is 4 ... ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘h5 6 ♗e2 ♗g4 7 0-0 g6 8 ♘c1 ♗xc2 9 ♘xe2 ♗g7 10 ♘d3 ♘c6 !! c3 0-0 12 ♘exf4 with a slight advantage to White (analysis by Hay).

	5	h4

After 5 ♗c4 White, in addition to the transposition to the Hanstein Gambit has to reckon with 5 ... g4!?. Dal-Danberg, Sweden 1968.

went 6 ♗xf4 gf 7 ♗xf3 ♕h4+ (7 ... ♗e6! deserved attention) 8 ♗g3 ♕f6 9 ♕b3 ♗c6 10 ♖f1 ♕e7 11 ♘c3 ♗g7 with chances for both sides. On 6 0-0, Calvo-Gligorić, Montilla 1977, continued 6 ... gf 7 ♕xf3 ♕f6! 8 e5 de 9 de ♕xc5 10 ♗xf7-? ♔xf7 11 ♗xf4 ♕f5 with a winning advantage for Black.
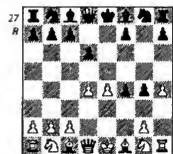
    5   **g4**

C1 6 ♘g5?!
C2 6 ♘g1

C1

    6   **♘g5?!**   **f6!**

And not 6 ... h6? 7 ♘xf7 ♔xf7 8 ♗c4+ ♔g7 9 ♗xf4 and by comparison with the normal variation of the Allgaier Gambit White has an extra tempo and consequently his attack is very difficult to meet, as Kholodkevich-Zakharov, Moscow 1962, confirms: 9 ... ♘f6 10 ♘c3 ♘h5 11 0-0 ♖xh4 12 ♘e2 ♘c6 13 g3 ♕c7 14 ♕d3 ♘d8 15 e5 ♕e8 16 ♖ae1 ♕g6 17 ♕c3 ♗f5 18 d5 ♗g8 19 ♘d4 ♗g7 20 ♘xf5 ♘xf5 21 ♗d3 ♖h7 22 ♗xf5 ♕xf5 23 ♗xh6 and White wins.

    7   **♘h3**

Or 7 ♗xf4 fg 8 ♗xg5 (if 8 hg then 8 ... ♕g3+) 8 ... ♕e7 9 ♕d2 ♗e6 and White has inadequate compensation for the piece.

    7   **gh**
    8   **♕h5+**   **♔d7**

Heuer-Randviir, Tallinn 1949. White has inadequate compensation for the piece.

C2

    6   **♘g1** *(27)*

Now Black has several lines:
C21 6 ... ♕f6
C22 6 ... ♗h6
C23 6 ... f3
C24 6 ... ♘f6

C21

    6   **♕f6**
    7   **♘c3**   **c6**
    8   **e5**

Or 8 ♘ge2 f3 9 ♘g3 f2+ 10 ♔e2 b6 11 ♗g5 ♗a6+ 12 ♔e3 ♗h6 13 ♕xg4 with the better game for White (Bhend).

    8   **de**
    9   **♘e4**   **♕e7**
   10   **de**   **♕xe5**
   11   **♕e2**   **♗g7**

11 ... ♕d7 would be met by 12 ♗d2! with strong threats.

   12   **♘d6+**   **♔f8**
   13   **♗f4!**

White has a dangerous initiative (Hay).

C22

    6   **♗h6**

    7   **♘e3**

Hay suggests 7 ♘e2 ♕f6 8 ♘bc3 f3 9 ♘g3 f2+ 10 ♔e2 ♘e7 11 ♗xh6 ♕xh6 12 ♕c1 when White gets back the pawn with quite a good endgame. In Planinc-Portisch, Portorož-Ljubljana 1973, Black tried 8 ... ♘e7 9 ♕d2 ♘bc6 10 g3 ♗d7 11 gf 0-0-0 12 ♗g2 ♕g7 13 d5 ♘e5 14 ♕e3 ♔b8 15 ♕f2 w:th a balanced position.

    7   **c6**

7 ... ♘c6! is a more enterprising move. Planinc-Gligorić, Portorož-Ljubljana 1977, continued 8 ♘ge2 f3 9 ♘f4 f2+ 10 ♔xf2 g3+ 11 ♔xg3 ♘f6 12 ♗e2 ♗g8 13 ♔f2 ♘g4+ 14 ♗xg4 ♗xg4 15 ♕d3 ♗g7 16 ♗e3 ♕d7 17 ♘ce2 0-0-0 18 ♘g3 f5 19 ♘xf5 ♖df8! 20 ♘xg7 ♕xg7 21 ♔e1 ♘b4 22 ♕c3 ♕e7 23 ♕xb4 ♖xf4! 24 ♔d2 ♕xe4 25 ♖ag1 ♗f5 26 ♕b3 ♖g3 27 ♖h2 ♖f2+ 0-1.

7 ... ♘f6 is also worth a look. After 8 ♘ge2 d5 9 e5 ♘h5 10 g3 ♘c6 11 ♘xf4 ♘xf4 12 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 13 gf ♘e7 14 h5 ♖g8 Black had a fine game in Hebden-Thipsay, Commonwealth Ch, London 1985.

    8   **♗d3!?**

This move deserves practical testing. The alternative is 8 ♘ge2

♕f6 9 g3 ♗g4 10 ♘f4 and White has good prospects in the centre in return for the pawn (Bhend).

    8   **♕f6**
    9   **e5**   **de**
   10   **♘e4**   **♕e7**
   11   **de**   **♕xe5**
   12   **♕e2!**

This is stronger than 12 ♗d2 f5! 13 ♗c3 ♕c7 14 ♕e2 (bad is 14 ♗xh8 fe) 14 ... fe 15 ♕xe4 ♕xc4-16 ♗xe4 ♘f6 17 ♗xf6 0-0-0 18 ♗g5 ♗g7 and Black retains his extra pawn.

C23

    6   **f3**
    7   **gf**   **♗e7**
    8   **♗e3**   **♗xh4+**

9 ♗d2 ♘c6 10 ♘c3 ♗f6 11 ♔c1 with unclear play.

C24

    6   **♘f6**

This leads to a position characteristic of one of the main lines of the Kieseritsky Gambit: 7 ♗xf4 ♘xe4 8 ♕d2 ♕e7 9 ♕xd2 10 ♔xd2 ♕xe2+ 11 ♘xe2, Despite the pawn deficit, White's chances are not worse (Hay).

9 3 ... ♘f6

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	♘f6

This is a defence in the spirit of the fight which takes place in the opening nowadays: Black avoids weakening his pawn chains and sets complicated tactical play in motion.

If we exclude the possibility White has of transposing to Variation A of the next chapter by 4 ♘c3 d5 5 ed ♘xd5, then the only continuation for him is:

4 e5   ♘h5

Averbakh gives preference to 4 ... ♘e4, when now:

a) Tolush-Averbakh, Kislovodsk 1960, went 5 d3 ♘g5 6 ♗xf4 ♘e6 7 ♗g3 d5 8 ♘c3 d4 9 ♘e4 ♘c6 10 ♗e2 ♗e7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♕d2 with the freer game for White. Arnason-Zaitsev, Sochi 1980, varied here with 6 ... ♘xf3+ 7 ♕xf3 d6 8 ♗e2 ♘c6 9 ed ♗xd6 10 c3 0-0 11 0-0 ♕e7 12 ♗xd6 ♕xd6 when, according

to Suetin, White could have obtained the advantage by 13 d4.
b) Fewer prospects are offered by 5 d4 d5 6 ♗xf4 c5 7 ♘bd2 ♘c6 8 ♘xe4 de 9 d5 ef 10 dc ♕xd1+ (or 10 ... ♕b6!?) 11 ♔xd1 bc 12 gf ♗e6 13 ♖g1 with a roughly equal game in Krasnov-Averbakh, Moscow Ch 1970.
Now White has:

A 5 g4?!
B 5 ♘c3
C 5 ♗e2
D 5 d4
E 5 ♕e2

A

5 g4?!

This move, which attempts to take advantage of the awkward position of the black king's knight, has been suggested by some Tashkent players.

5	...	fg
6	d4	d5!

Weaker is 6 ... d6 7 ♘g5 g6 8

♕f3 f6 9 ♗c4 ♕e7 10 hg fg 11 ♖xh5 gh 12 ♕xh5+ ♔d7 13 ♗xg5 ♕g7 14 e6+ with a winning attack, Airapetov-Tinger, Tashkent 1952.

7	♘g5	g6
8	hg	

No better is 8 ♕f3 f6 9 ♘g6 ♕e7 10 hg fg 11 ♖xh5 ♕xe6+ (Cheremisin).

| 8 | ... | ♘xg3! |

But not 8 ... ♗e7? 9 ♖xh5 gh 10 ♕xh5 ♗xg5 11 ♗xg5 ♕d7 12 ♘c3 c6 13 ♕h6! ♕e6 14 ♕g7 ♖f8 15 ♗d3! as Cheremisin-Artyushkin, Moscow 1959.

9	♕f3	♘f5
10	♘xh7	♗e7!

Black wins.

B

5 ♘c3

And now:

B1 5 ... d5
B2 5 ... d6

B1

5	...	d5
6	d4	c6

a) On 6 ... g5 very strong is 7 g4! ♘g7 (bad is 7 ... ♗xg4 8 ♖g1) 8 h4 ♗xg4 9 hg ♘e6 10 ♗h3 ♗xf3 11 ♕xf3 ♘xd4 12 ♕xf4 ♘xc2+ 13 ♔d1 ♘xa1 14 ♖f1 with a very strong attack.
b) 6 ... ♘c6 7 ♗e2 g5 8 0-0 ♖g8 9 ♕d3 ♗g6 10 ♕b5 g4 11 ♘e1 a6 12 ♕xd5 ♘xd4 13 ♗d3 leads to a complicated position in which White's chances are preferable.

7 ♗e2

Unclear play results after 7 g3 fg

8 ♘g5 g6 9 ♕f3 f6 10 hg fg 11 ♖xh5 g4 12 ♕h1 gh 13 ♕xh5+ ♔d7 14 e6+! ♔f5 15 ♗f4+ ♗d6 16 ♕f7+. White's attack seems good enough for a draw.

7 ... g5

If 7 ... ♖g8, then 8 0-0 g5 9 ♕d3 ♖h8 (if 9 ... ♖g6 10 ♘h4). This is a recommendation of Gahlnbeck, but Black's rook shuttle can inspire no confidence. Gahlnbeck continues with 10 g3 ♗g7 11 gf ♗f5 12 ♕d1 g4 13 ♘e1 h5 and is of the opinion that Black stands better. Keres however, points out that after 14 ♘g2 there is nothing wrong with this position for White.

8 ♘xg5

with somewhat the better prospects for White.

B2

5	...	d6
6	♗c4	♘c6
7	♕e2	♗e6!
8	♗xe6	fe
9	ed	♗xd6

Or 9 ... ♕xd6 10 ♘g5 ♕e5 11 ♕xe5 ♘xe5 12 d4 ♘f7 13 ♘xe6 with equal chances.

10	♕xe6+	♕e7
11	♕xe7+	♔xe7

The position is level (Gahlnbeck).

C

5 ♗e2 (28)

With this move White tries to take advantage of the awkward position of the black knight in the quickest way possible.

28
B
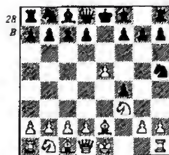
C1 5 ... g5?!
C2 5 ... d6?!
C3 5 ... g6

C1

5 ...   g5?!

This, the old move, allows White to complicate the position to his benefit with variation C12.
C11 6 ♘xg5
C12 6 0-0!

C11

6 ♘xg5   ♕xg5

Much better than Schlechter's recommendation 6 ... ♘g3!? 7 hg ♕xg5 8 g4! ♘xe5 9 d4 and 10 0-0 with a big lead in development.

7 ♗xh5   ♕xg5

Or, as was played in one of Shumanov's games: 7 ... ♕h4+ 8 ♔f1 ♗c5 9 d4 ♗xd4 10 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 11 ♕xd4 ♘c6 12 c6+ de 13 ♕xh8 e5 and now on 14 ♘d2 there could have followed 14 ... ♗g4! 15 ♕xa8 ♘d4 16 ♘f3 ♗xf3 17 ♗d2 ♕g4 18 ♕g1 ♗d1 19 ♖h1 ♕c2 20 ♔g1 f3 21 gf ♘xf3 mate (Glaskov).

8 ♕f3   ♕xf3

9 ♗xf3   ♘c6!

11 d4 ♗h6 12 ♖f1 ♗f5 13 ♘a3 ♗f8 14 ♖xf4 ♗g6 with slightly the better game for Black.

C12

6 0-0   ♖g8

7 d4

and White obtains an advantage. Here the following variations are possible:
a) 7 ... d5 (7 ... d6 does not alter things) 8 ♕d3 ♖g6 9 ♘h4 ♖h6 10 ♗xh5! ♖xh5 11 ♘f5 ♕d7 (even worse is 11 ... ♗d5 12 ♕xf5 ♕xf7? 13 ♖xf4) 12 g4 fg 13 ♘xg3 and White stands better (Gahlnbeck).
b) 7 ... g4 8 ♘e1 d5 and now:
b1) 9 ♗xf4? ♘xf4 10 ♖xf4 ♗h6.
b2) 9 ♘d3! after which 9 ... f3? is not playable because of 10 ♗xf3! (Glaskov).

C2

5 ...   d6

6 0-0   de

7 ♘xe5

7 d4 would transpose into Camara-Sayeed, Lucerne Ol 1982. That game continued 7 ... ed 8 ♗c4 ♗e6 9 ♗xe6 fe 10 ♕e2 ♘c6 11 ♕xe6+ ♗e7 12 ♕h3 with an unclear position.
C21 7 ... ♗c5+
C22 7 ... ♕d4+

C21

7 ...   ♗c5+

8 ♔h1   ♘f6

8 ... ♘g3+ 9 hg fg does not work because of 10 ♗b5+! c6 11 ♕h5 g6 12 ♘xc6 ♘xc6 13 ♕e5+ ♕e7 14 ♕xh8+ ♗d7 15 ♕xh7.

9 c3

Stronger than 9 ♘d3? played in Chigorin-Marco, Vienna 1903.

9 ...   ♘bd7

10 ♘xd7   ♗xd7

11 d4 ♗d6 12 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 13 ♖xf4 0-0 14 ♗d3 with advantage to White.

C22

7 ...   ♕d4+

8 ♔h1   ♘f6

9 ♘d3   ♗d6

Bad is 9 ... g5 10 b3! ♕xa1 11 ♗b2 ♕xa2 12 ♗xf6 ♖g8 13 ♗g4! with a very strong attack.

10 c3

Another satisfactory move for White is 10 ♘c3.

After 10 c3, wherever Black retreats his queen, White plays 11 ♘xf4 and obtains a small advantage.

C3

5 ...   g6

6 d4   ♗g7

7 0-0   d6

8 ♘c3   0-0

9 ♘d5

A suggestion of Korchnoi. After 9 ♘e1 de 10 ♗xh5 gh 11 de ♕xd1 12 ♘xd1 ♘c6 13 ♗xf4 (Chigorin-Steinitz, Havana 1892) and Black could have obtained the advantage by 13 ... ♘xe5 14 ♘e3 ♗e6.

9 ...   de

10 de   ♘c6

11 ♘xf4   ♕xd1

12 ♖xd1   ♘xf4

13 ♗xf4   ♗e6

with equality.

D

5 d4

Black now has two main possibilities:
D1 5 ... d5
D2 5 ... d6!

The immediate 5 ... g5? is refuted by 6 g4!.

D1

5 ...   d5

Now either of the following is good for White:
D11 6 c4
D12 6 ♗e2

D11

6 c4   ♘c6

Or 6 ... ♗b4+ 7 ♘c3 ♘c6 8 ♗e2 0-0 9 0-0 ♗xc3 (even worse is 9 ... dc 10 d5 ♗c5+ 11 ♔h1 ♘e7 12 ♘g5 ♘f5 13 ♘ce4) 10 bc ♗g4 11 ♘e1 ♗xe2 12 ♕xe2 g6 13 ♗xf4, as Muchnik-Dzhalarov, Moscow Garrison Ch 1952.

Cheremisin recommends 7 cd ♕xd5 8 ♘c3 ♗b4 9 ♗e2 ♗g4 10 0-0 ♗xc3 11 bc 0-0 12 h3!.

7 ...   ♗b4!

8 ♗d2   ♗xd2+

9 ♕xd2   0-0

10 cd ♕xd5 11 ♘c3 ♕d5 12 0-0

♗g4 13 ♖ad1 ♘e7 14 ♘g5! ♗xe2 15 ♕xe2 g6 16 c6! f6 17 ♘f7 is Verkhovsky-Ambayev, RSFSR 1959.

D12

6   ♗e2

With the threat of 7 0-0 and 8 ♘e1.

D121 6 ... g5
D122 6 ... ♗g4

D121

6   ...   g5
7   ♘xg5

In Lutikov-Kuzmin, Sochi 1970, 7 0-0 was played whereupon Black should have replied 7 ... ♖g8!

7   ...   ♖xg5
8   ♗xh5   ♕xg2

Inferior is 8 ... ♕h4+ 9 ♔f1 ♗e6 10 ♗f3 ♘c6 11 ♘c3 with the better game for White, R.Byrne-Guimard, New York 1951.

9   ♕f3   ♕xf3

White gets a dangerous attack after 9 ... ♕xc2 10 ♘c3.

10   ♗xf3   c6
11   ♗xf4   ♗f5

with chances of equalising for Black.

D122

6   ...   ♗g4
7   0-0   ♘c6

After 7 ... ♗e7 White can still carry out his plan of 8 ♘e1 ♗xe2 9 ♕xe2 g6 10 ♘d3.

8   c3   g6
9   ♘e1   ♗xe2

10   ♕xe2   ♕e7

and now, as Keres points out, instead of 11 ♘d3 f5 12 ♗xf4 ♘xf4 13 ♗xf4 ♘d8 14 g4, as in Bhend-Pachman, Kecskemet 1964, very strong is 11 ♕b5 0-0-0 12 ♘d3!.

D2

5   ...   d6 (29)

Probably the strongest line for Black.
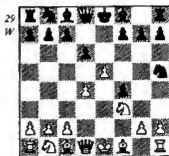
Now, although White has three possibilities, the first two offer him very little:

D21 6 ♘c3
D22 6 ♗c4
D23 6 ♕e2!?

D21

6   ♘c3   de
7   ♕e2   ♗g4
8   ♕xe5   ♗e7!

Not 8 ... ♕e7?? 9 ♘d5! as in Reti-Szekely, Abbazia 1912.

9   ♘d5   ♘c6
10   ♗b5   0-0
11   ♗xc6   ♗d6!

with a small advantage to Black (Gahlnbeck).

D22

6   ♗c4   ♘c6!

6 ... d5 7 ♗e2 transposes to B1 above, which is favourable to White.

7   ♘c3

Marshall-Schlechter, Vienna 1903, went 7 0-0 de 8 ♕e2 ♗g4 9 ♘c3 ♗d6 10 de ♗c5+ 11 ♔h1 0-0 with an equal game. Black's play however, can be improved upon: 9 ... ♗xf3! 10 ♖xf3 ♕xd4+ 11 ♗e3 ♕d7 and it is doubtful whether White's lead in development can compensate him for his material deficit.

7   ...   de
8   ♕e2   ♗g4!
9   de   ♗xf3
10   ♕xf3   ♕h4+
11   g3   ♘d4
12   ♕e4   ♘xg3

Also possible is 12 ... ♕e7.

13   hg   ♕xg3+
14   ♔d1   0-0-0

with an obvious advantage to Black (Gahlnbeck).

D23

6   ♕e2!?

A little-analysed line which leads to great complications.
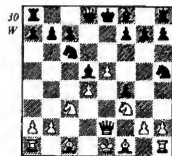
6   ...   d5

Not 6 ... ♗e7 because of 7 ed cd and 8 ♕b5+ winning a piece.

7   c4

It should be pointed out that the attempt to exploit the black king's knight's position by 7 g3?! does not work: 7 ... fg 8 ♘g5 g6 9 ♕f3 f6

10 hg fg 11 ♘xh5 g4 (a mistake would be 11 ... gh 12 ♕xh5+ ♔d7 13 ♗xg5 ♗e7 14 ♗h3+ ♔c6 15 ♕h6+ ♔b5 16 ♗f1+ and Black is soon mated) because White cannot check from h3 the attack fails (Cheremisin).

7   ...   ♗e6
8   cd   ♗xd5
9   ♘c3   ♘c6 (30)

This position requires practical testing. White's chances would seem to be preferable.

10   ♗d2!

The immediate 10 ♘xd5 ♕xd5 11 ♕c4 fails to 11 ... ♗b4+ 12 ♗f2 ♕xc4 13 ♗xc4 ♘d4!.

10   ...   ♗b4
11   ♘xd5   ♕xd5
12   0-0-0   ♕xa2

Or 12 ... 0-0-0 13 ♕c4 ♗xd2+ 14 ♖xd2 ♕xc4+ 15 ♗xc4 f6 16 ♗e6+ ♔b8 17 ♗g4 g6 18 ♗xh5 with the better chances for White.

13   d5!

and now:

a) 13 ... ♗xd2+ 14 ♔xd2 ♕xd5 15 ♕xh5 ♕xe5 16 ♕xc5+ ♗xc5 17

♖c1 [6 18 ♘c4 0-0-0 19 ♘xe5 fe 20 ♖xe5 ♖he8 21 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 22 ♗d3 with a slight advantage for White in the endgame.

b) 13 ... ♕a4+ 14 ♗c2 ♕a4+ 15 ♔b1 ♘e7 (15 ... ♗xd2 16 cd!) 16 ♕b5+ ♕xb5 17 ♗xb5+ c6 18 ♗xb4 cb when White has compensation for the sacrificed pawns.

E

5   ♕e2

This is a sharp idea of Keres, the aim being to use the unsatisfactory position of the black knight on h5 for creating an attack against Black's king-side position.

5   ...   ♗e7
6   d4   0-0

Losing is 6 ... ♗h4+?? ♔d1 0-0 8 g4! fg 9 ♕g2! This last move is stronger than the plausible 9 ♕e4? which can be met by 9 ... g2! 10 ♗xg2 ♗e7 and it is difficult for White to regroup his forces for a decisive attack, whilst on 9 ♕g2! Black's position is indefensible, Randviir-Tepaks, Tallinn 1946.

7   g4

An interesting idea was tried out in the game Basman-Griffiths, Bognor Regis 1968: 7 ♘c3 d6 8 ♗d2 de 9 de ♗h4+ 10 g3 fg 11 0-0-0 ♗d7 12 hg ♕xg3 13 ♕h2 ♘xh1 14 ♖xh4 ♗g4 15 ♗d3! ♗xd1 16 ♘f5 ♕xd3 17 cd ♗g4 18 ♘h6+ gh 19 ♕xh6 ♗d7 20 ♕xd3 ♖ae8 21 ♘f6+ 1-0. But Black should play 8 ... ♘c6 9 0-0-0 ♗g4

with the better game.

7   ...   fg
8   ♕g2

White cannot achieve anything with the adventurous 8 hg ♘xg3 9 ♕h2 ♘xh1 10 ♗d3 f5! (but not 10 ... g6 because of 11 ♕h6!) and now:

a) 11 ef g6!:
a1) 12 ♘g5 h5 13 ♗xg6 ♗xf6 (Alekhine);
a2) 12 ♗xg6 hg 13 ♘g5 ♗b4+ 14 c3 ♖e8+ 15 ♔d1 ♕xf6 (Keres) when, as in (a1), Black repels the attack whilst preserving his material advantage.

b) Also dubious is 11 ♗c4+ ♔h8 12 ♘c3, when adequate for Black is the simple 12 ... b5 13 ♘xb5 (or 13 ♗xb5 c6 and 14 ... d5) 13 ... d5 14 ed cd 15 ♗d5 ♗d7! 16 ♖xa8 ♗xb5 17 ♗f4 ♘c6 18 0-0-0 ♘f2 19 ♖xc6 ♗xc6 20 ♕xf2 ♗xf3 21 ♕xf3 ♗g5 etc.

8   ...   d3
9   hg   ♗g4
10   ♘h2 (31)
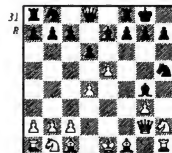
a) 10 ♗e3 led to a bad position for White in Randviir-Tolush, Tallinn

1945: 10 ... ♘c6 11 ♘c3 de 12 d5 ♘b4 13 ♘xe5 ♕c8 14 ♔d2 ♕f5 15 ♘xg4 ♕xc2+ 16 ♔e1 ♘d3+ 17 ♔xd3 ♕xg2 and Black wins.

b) 10 ♗d3!? is Keres' recommendation and worthy of attention. It would then be a mistake to play 10 ... de? 11 ♘xe5 ♕xd4 12 ♕e4! winning a piece for White (12 ... ♕xe4+ 13 ♗xe4 ♘xg3 14 ♗xh7+ ♔h8 15 ♖h2 ♗e6 16 ♗f4 – *editor's note*).

10   ...   ♘xg3

The most dangerous continuation for White.

Weaker is 10 ... ♕d7 11 ♗xg4 ♕xg4 12 ♗e2 ♕xg3+ 13 ♕f2! ♕xf2+ 14 ♔xf2 and now:
a) 14 ... ♘c6 15 ♖xh5 is in White's favour, Ney-Bannik, USSR 1952.
b) 14 ... de 15 de ♗c5+ 16 ♔g2

♘c6 17 ♖xh5 with advantage to White.

11   ♖g1!

This is stronger than 11 ♘xg4? ♘xh1 12 ♕xh1 de etc. as occurred in Gusev-Shcherbakov, Lvov 1949.

11   ...   ♗f5!
12   ♘f3

In Wade-Alexander, Staunton Memorial 1951, 12 ♗f4? which is in accord with the old recommendations, was played. The game continued 12 ... ♗c4 13 ♘f3 ♘h5 with a big advantage to Black.

After the text move, Keres gives 12 ... ♘h5 13 ♖h1 ♗g6 14 ♗e2 or 14 ♗e3. The unsatisfactory position of the black knight on h5, however, can hardly outweigh White's material costs.

10   3 ... d5 4 ed ♘f6

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	d5
4	ed	♘f6

One of the most popular lines in the King's Gambit. Black, refusing to make any material gains, destroys White's centre and aims for the speediest possible development of his pieces.

4 ... ♗d6, with a rather different development of the pieces in mind, has also been played, e.g.:
a) 5 ♘c3 ♘e7 6 d4 0-0 7 ♗d3 ♘d7 8 0-0, Spassky-Bronstein, 27th USSR Ch, Leningrad 1960, and now instead of the natural 8 ... ♘f6 Bronstein lost a fatal tempo with 8 ... h6? Play then continued 9 ♘e4! ♘xd5 10 c4 ♘e3 11 ♗xe3 fe 12 c5 ♗e7 13 ♗c2 ♖e8 14 ♗b5 with a won position for White. *Editor's note: the conclusion was 15 ... ♘f8 16 ♘xf7 ♗d7 17 ♖xf1 ♗f5 18 ♕xf5 ♕d7 19 ♕f4 ♗f6 20 ♘3e5 ♕e7 21 ♗b3 ♗xe5 22 ♘xe5+ ♔h7 23 ♕e4+ 1-0.*
b) 5 ♗b5+ ♗d7 6 ♗xd7+ ♘xd7 7 0-0 ♘e7 8 c4 0-0 9 d4 ♘b6 10 ♘c3 ♘g6 11 ♕d3 ♘f6 12 ♗d2 ♕d7 13 ♖ae1 ♖fe8 14 a3 a5 15 ♗b5 with the better position for White, Gurgenidze-Radovici, Tiflis 1960.

After 4 ... ♘f6 White has four main possibilities:
A 5 ♗c4
B 5 ♘c3
C 5 ♗b5+
D 5 c4

A

5	♗c4	♘xd5

For 5 ... ♗d6 see B1.

6	♗xd5

It is doubtful if this is the best move. Black played the opening very badly and lost quickly in Bronstein-I.Zaitsev, Moscow 1969: 6 0-0 ♗e6 7 ♗b3 ♗d6? 8 c4 ♘e7 9 d4 ♘g6 10 c5 ♗e7 11 ♗xe6 fe 12 ♖e1 0-0 13 ♖xe6 ♗xc5? 14 ♕b3 ♗xd4+ 15 ♘xd4 ♕xd4 16 ♗e3! 1-0.

An improvement here would be 7 ... ♗c7. Spassky-Pytel, Nice Ol 1974, went 7 ♕e2 ♗c7 8 d4 d4 c6 (8 ... 0-0 is simpler) 9 ♕e2 0-0 10 ♘xd5 cd 11 ♗d3 ♘c6 12 ♗xf4 with an advantage for White.

6	...	♕xd5
7	♘c3	♕d8!

White got the advantage in Leonhardt-Szekely, Abbazia 1912, after 7 ... ♕h5? 8 d4 ♗d6 9 ♕e2+.

8	0-0	♗e7
9	d4	0-0
10	♗xf4	♘c6

with a level game despite White's lead in development.

B

5	♘c3

And now:
B1 5 ... ♗d6
B2 5 ... ♘xd5!

B1

5	...	♗d6 (32)
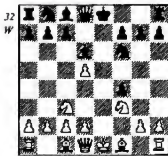
Contrary to the opinion of Keres and Pachman, who refer to Sämisch-Pachman, Prague 1943, it is not easy for Black to equalise after this move.

6	♗c4

Better than 6 ♗b5+ ♘bd7 (not 6 ... ♗d7 7 ♕e2+ ♗e7 8 ♕xe7+ ♔xe7 9 ♗c4 ♖e8 10 0-0 ♔f8 11 d4 and because of the bishop on d7 Black is unable to prevent 12 ♘e5, after which White had an advantage in Evans-Filip, New York 1950) 7 ♕e2+ ♕e7 8 ♕xe7+ ♔xe7 9 0-0 ♖d8 10 d4 ♘b6 11 ♗d2 ♗f5 12 ♘e1 ♔f8 which is equal, Pomar-Medina, Las Palmas 1974.

6	...	0-0
7	0-0	♘bd7

Black equalised in Bronstein-Matanović, USSR v Yugoslavia, Lvov 1962, after 7 ... c6 8 d4 cd 9 ♘xd5 ♗d6 10 ♘xf6+ ♕xf6 11 ♗xe6 fe 12 ♘e5 ♗xe5 13 de ♕xe5 14 ♗xf4 ♕e5+ 15 ♔h1 ♘c6. However, instead of 11 ♗xe6, 11 ♗e2 deserves attention, when White's position looks the more attractive.

8	d4!

This natural move (8 a3? was played in Sämisch-Pachman) offers White good prospects, e.g. 8 ... ♘b6 9 ♗b3 ♗g4 (if 9 ... a5 then 10 a3!) 10 ♕d3 with the threat of 11 ♘e5.

B2

5	...	♘xd5!
6	♘xd5
---	------

No better is 6 ♗c2 ♘xc3 7 bc ♗d6 8 d4 0-0 0-0 ♘c6 10 c4 b6 11 c3 ♗g4 12 ♘e1 ♗xe2 13 ♕xe2 ♕h4 14 ♘f3 ♕h5 with an equal

game, Spielmann-Nyholm, Abbazia 1912.

6   ...   ♕xd5
7   d4   ♗e7!

a) 7 ... ♗d6? is considerably worse: 8 c4 and now:

a1) 8 ... ♕e4+ 9 ♔f2 ♗f5 10 c5 ♗c7 11 ♗b5+! c6 12 ♗c4 ♗e6 13 ♖e1 ♕g6 14 ♗xe6 fe 15 ♕b3 with a won position, Schlechter-Mieses, Vienna 1903.

a3) 8 ... ♕e6+ 9 ♔f2:

a31) 9 ... ♕f6 10 c5 ♗e7 11 ♕d2! g5 12 b4 and 13 ♗b2;

a2) 9 ... c5 10 ♗d3 ♕h6 11 ♖e1+ ♔f8 12 ♕e2 ♗d7 13 b4! with a big advantage, Reti-Nyholm, Baden 1914.

b) 7 ... ♗g4 is also inadequate: 8 ♗xf4 ♗c6 9 ♗xc7 and now:

b1) 9 ... ♗xf3 10 ♕xf3 ♕xf3 11 gf ♖c8 12 ♗f4 ♗xd4 13 0-0-0! White is better, Stoltz-Rellstab, Swinemünde 1932;

b2) 9 ... ♔d7 10 ♗g3 ♖e8+ 11 ♔f2 ♗c8 12 c3 h5 was Spielmann-Eliskases, match game 1937. Now instead of 13 h4 White should play 13 ♕b3 ♕f5 14 ♗b5! ♖e6 15 ♖ae1 with a big advantage, Barle-Mariotti, Ljubljana 1975.

8   c4

This, the main line, is probably not the best.

a) 8 ♗e2, a recommendation of Tartakower, is still untested. It transposes to variation C of the Cunningham Gambit (see next chapter, p.72).

b) 8 ♗d3!? was tried out in

Rubinstein-Yates, Hastings 1922. There followed 8 ... g5 9 ♕e2? ♗f5 10 ♗xf5 ♕xf5 11 g4 (following Rubinstein-Kostić, Hague 1921 – ed.) 11 ... ♕d7 and now it becomes clear that 12 ♘xg5 would be met by 12 ... ♘c6 13 c3 0-0-0 with a very strong attack for Black. However, instead of 9 ♕e2? there are two stronger continuations:

b1) 9 c4! ♕e6+ 10 ♔f2 intending 11 ♖e1 (Euwe).

b2) 9 0-0 g4 (9 ... ♗g4 10 c3 ♘c6 11 ♕b3! ♕xb3 12 ab) 10 ♖e1 ♕xd4+ 11 ♔h1 in both cases with some initiative for the pawn.

8   ...   ♕e4+

8 ... ♗d6 could be met by 9 c5 ♕f6 as in Korchnoi-Borisenko, Tula 1950, and now instead of 10 ♗b5+ c6 11 ♗e2, stronger is 10 ♕d2! g5 11 b4 and 12 ♗b2 with advantage to White.

Now White has:

B21   9 ♔f2
B22   9 ♗e2

B21

9   ♔f2   ♗f5 (33)
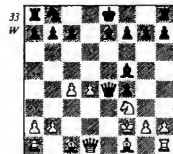
B211   10 ♕a4–
B212   10 ♗e2
B213   10 c5

B211

10   ♕a4+   ♘c6!
11   ♗d2   0-0-0
12   ♖e1   ♕c2

Not 12 ... ♗h4+ 13 g3 fg+ 14 hg ♗xg3+ 15 ♔xg3 ♕g4+ 16 ♔f2 ♘xd4 17 ♘e5! ♗c2 18 ♕xa7 ♕f5+ 19 ♔g3 which wins for White (Novikov).

13   ♕xc2   ♗xc2
14   ♗xf4   ♖he8

is better for Black (Levenfish).

B212

10   ♗e2   ♘c6
11   ♖e1   0-0-0
12   ♗f1   ♕c2+
13   ♕xc2   ♗xc2
14   ♗xf4   ♖he8

with an equal game.

Inferior is 14 ... ♗f6? 15 d5 ♘b4 16 ♖ac1 ♘d3+ 17 ♗xd3 ♗xd3 18 ♗e5 Novikov-Borisenko, Leningrad 1956.

B213

10   c5   ♘c6

According to Spielmann 10 ... g5? is bad because of 11 ♗b5+ c6 12 ♖e1 ♕c2+ 13 ♕xc2 ♗xc2 14 ♗c4 h6 15 ♖e2 ♗f5 16 ♗xf4 gf 17 ♖ae1 ♗e6 18 ♗xe6 fe 19 ♖xe6 ♖h7 20 ♘h4 ♔d8 21 ♘g6 ♗g5 22 h4 and White wins.

11   ♗b5   ♕d5
12   ♗xf4

Or 12 ♖e1 ♗c4 13 ♕e2 f5.
12   ...   0-0-0
13   ♗e3   ♗f6
14   ♕a4   ♗e4!

Kieninger-Eliskases, Stuttgart 1939.

In Keres' opinion White's best chance in this position is to transpose into the slightly worse ending by 15 ♗xc6 ♕xc6 16 ♕xc6 ♗xc6.

B22

9   ♗e2   ♘c6
10   0-0   ♗f5
11   ♖e1   0-0-0
12   ♗f1   ♕c2

The position is equal. Spielmann-Milner-Barry, Margate 1938.

C

5   ♗b5+

The most dangerous for Black.

5   ...   c6

Alternatives are not particularly attractive:

a) 5 ... ♗d7:

a1) 6 ♗c4 ♕e7+ 7 ♗e2 (worse is 7 ♕e2 b5! 8 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 9 ♗b3 c5! 10 dc ♘xc6 11 d4 ♗d6 Tukmansky-Rajzman, Tallinn 1976) 7 ... ♘xd5 8 0-0 ♘c6 9 c4 ♘b6 10 d4 g5 11 c5 ♘d5 and now, instead of 12 ♕b3 g4 13 ♕xd5 gf 14 ♖xf3 0-0-0 15 ♗xf4 ♗e6, Cheremisin-Ivanov, Moscow 1965, 12 ♘c3 deserved attention.
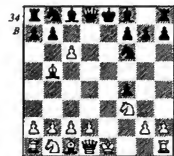
a2) 6 ♕e2! ♗e7 7 d6 cd 8 d4 0-0 9 ♘c3 ♖c8 10 ♗xd7 ♘bxd7 11 0-0 ♕b6 12 a4 ♗f8 is better for White

(Korchnoi).

b) 5 ... ♘bd7 and now:

b1) 6 c4 a6 7 ♗xd7+ ♗xd7 8 0-0 with the better position for White.

b2) 6 0-0 ♘xd5 7 c4 ♘f6 8 d4 ♗e7 9 ♘xf4 0-0 10 ♗a4 ♘b6 11 ♗b3 ♗g4 12 ♘c3 c6 13 ♕d2 when White had the better chances in the game Bronstein-Ragozin, Saltsjöbaden IZ 1948.

6 dc (34)

C1 6 ... ♘xc6
C2 6 ... bc

C1

6 ... ♘xc6!?

This move became fashionable after the well known Hartston-Spassky game from Hastings 1965-6.

7 d4 ♗d6!

Of course not 7 ... ♕a5+ 8 ♘c3 ♗d4 9 0-0 ♘xc3 10 ♕e2+ with advantage to White, Pachman-Vymetal, Prague 1953.

8 0-0

8 ♕e2+ is more commonly played: 8 ... ♗e6 and now:

a) 9 ♘g5? is answered not by 9 ... ♕e7?? but by 9 ... 0-0! 10 ♘xe6 fe 11 ♕xe6+ ♔h8 12 ♘xc6 bc 13 0-0 ♕c7 14 ♕h3 ♖ae8 with a strong initiative for the sacrificed pawn.

b) 9 ♘e5 0-0 10 ♘xc6 bc 11 ♗xf4 ♘d5 12 ♗g3 f6 13 ♘f3 ♗xg3+ 14 hg ♖e8 Black has a clear advantage in Hartston-Spassky. *Editor's note:* The further course of the game was 15 ♗f2 ♗f5 16 ♕e2 ♔h8 17 ♘c3 ♘e3 18 ♕c5 ♕g4+ 19 ♔g1 ♕d7 20 ♖f1 ♗xc2 21 ♕h4 ♘e3 22 ♖c1 g5 23 ♕h6 ♗g6 24 ♘a4 ♕g4 25 ♕h3 ♕c6 26 ♕c3 ♗xa2 27 ♘c5 ♕xc3 28 ♕d2 ♖ae8 0-1.

8 ... 0-0

9 ♘bd2!

This is a refinement of an interesting idea of Kuindzhi's, who as White against Zaitsev, Moscow 1970, played 9 c3 ♕g4 (stronger is 9 ... ♘d5!) 10 ♘a3! ♗xa3 11 ba ♕d6 12 ♕d3.

9 ... ♗g4
10 ♘c4 ♗c7
11 ♗xc6 bc
12 ♕d3 ♕d5

Glaskov-Simicyn, USSR 1972. According to Korchnoi White can gain the advantage by 13 ♘fe5.

C2

6 ... bc
7 ♗c4

Pachman's recommendation, 7 ♗c2 ♗d6 8 b3 0-0 9 ♘a3 followed by 10 ♘c4 and 11 ♗b2, has not undergone serious testing. Nonetheless, 7 ♗e2 deserves attention.

Lutikov-Holmov, Moscow 1970, went 7 ♗c2 ♗d6 8 d4 0-0 9 c4 ♘e8 10 ♘c3 ♘bd7 11 c5! ♗c7 12 0-0 ♘f8 13 ♘e5! ♗xe5 14 de ♘bd7 (Black also gets a bad position after the exchange of queens: 14 ... ♕xd1 15 ♗xd1 ♗xe5 16 b4 a5 17 ♗xf4 ♗e8 18 b5!) 15 b4 a5 16 ♘e4 ♕xe5 17 ♘d6 ♕d3 and now 18 ♕a4! (instead of 18 ♕c2?) would have assured White a big advantage.

7 ... ♘d5 (35)
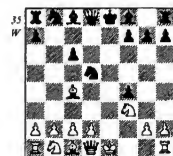
On 7 ... ♗d6 the check 8 ♕e2+ may be unpleasant:

a) 8 ... ♕e7 9 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 10 0-0 ♗e6 11 ♖e1 ♘bd7 12 d4 ♖he8 13 ♗xe6 fe 14 ♘bd2 h6 15 ♘c4 with numerous weaknesses in Black's camp, Blend-Barcza, Zürich 1959.

b) However, 7 ... ♗d6 need not necessarily be dismissed entirely. Furman has suggested 8 ... ♔f8!?. Genin-Bykov, Leningrad 1978, continued 9 d4 ♗g4 10 0-0 ♘bd7 11 ♔h1 ♕c7 12 ♘c3 h6 13 b3 g5 14 ♗b2 ♖g8 15 ♖ae1 ♘b6 16 ♕d3 ♖d8 17 ♘e5 ♘xc4 with a complicated game.

C21 8 0-0
C22 8 ♘c3

C21

8 0-0

This, the usual move here, is inferior to 8 ♘c3!.

8 ... ♗d6
9 ♘c3

a) White gets no advantage after 9 ♗b3 0-0 10 c4 ♘f6 11 d4 c5! 12 d5 ♗g4 Lutikov-Geller, 27th USSR Ch, Leningrad 1960.

b) Black even gets the better game after 9 d4 0-0 10 ♘c3 ♘xc3 11 bc e.g.:

b1) 11 ... ♗g4 12 ♕d3 ♘d7 13 g3 ♘b6 14 ♗b3 c5 Bronstein-Botvinnik, 20th USSR Ch, Moscow 1952. *Editor's note:* "My mind was only on winning" – Bronstein, but he was disappointed after 15 c4 ♕f6 16 ♘e5 ♗xe5 17 de ♕xe5 18 ♗xf4 ♕h5 19 ♖fe1 ♖fe8 20 a4 ♗c2 21 ♕c3 ♘d7! 22 a5 ♘f6 23 ♗a4 ♖e6 24 ♗g2 ♘e4 25 ♕a3 g5 0-1.

b2) 11 ... ♘d7 12 ♗d3 c5 13 ♘d2 cd 14 cd ♘f6 15 ♘e4 ♗g4 16 ♕d2 ♗c7 17 c3 ♘d5 Bronstein-Lilienthal, Moscow Ch 1953.

9 ... ♗e6
10 ♘e4 ♗c7!

Inferior is 10 ... ♗e7 11 ♗b3 and now:

a) 11 ... 0-0 12 d4 ♘d7 13 ♕c2 g5 14 c4 ♘b6 15 h4 h6 16 hg hg 17 ♘fxg5! ♗xg5 18 ♗xf4 with a decisive attack, Spassky-Sakharov, 27th USSR Ch, Leningrad 1960. *Editor's note:* The attack won through as follows: 18 ... ♗f6 19 ♖ad1 ♗f5 20 ♗e5 ♗xe4 21 ♕xe4 ♗xe5 22 de ♕g5 23 ♖f5 ♕g7 24

♕f4 ♖fe8 25 ♖g5 ♘xe5 26 ♖xg7+ ♔xg7 27 ♖d6 ♕g6 28 ♕f6+ ♔g8 29 ♗c2 ♘xc4 30 ♖d7 1-0.

b) 11 ... ♘d7 12 d4 ♘7f6 13 ♘cg5 ♗g4 14 ♕d3 ♘d7 15 ♗xd5 cd 16 ♗xf4 Tal-Wintr. radio simul v. Czechoslovak juniors 1960.

	11	♗b3	0-0
	12	d4	♘d7
	13	c4	♘e3

14 ♗xe3 fe 15 ♘fg5 ♘f6 16 ♗xf6+ gf 17 ♘xe6 fe 18 c5 ♔h8 19 ♕d3 e5 20 ♕xe3 ♕xd4 21 ♕xd4 ed with an equal game, Tal-Haubt, radio simul v. Czechoslovak juniors 1960.

C22

| | 8 | ♘e3! |

An important improvement of the variation. White prevents 8 ... ♗d6.

| | 8 | ... | ♗e7 |

The attempt by means of 8 ... ♗e6 to transpose to C21 fails to 9 ♗b3 (the simple 9 ♕e2 is also possible) 9 ... ♗d6 10 ♘e4 ♗c7 11 ♘c5 ♗g4 12 ♕e2+ and now Black cannot play 12 ... ♗e7? because of 13 ♗xf7+. 8 ... ♘xe3 is also not convincing. White replies 9 dc! and whether Black replies 9 ... ♕xd1+ 10 ♔xd1 ♗c6 11 ♖e1! or 9 ... ♗d6 10 ♕d4 0-0 11 ♗xf4 White has the better game.

	9	0-0	0-0
	10	d4	♘b6
	11	♗d3	g5
	12	♘e2	♗c6

13 b3 ♘8d7 14 c4 ♗f6 15 ♕c2 h6

16 ♗b2 ♖e8, Mutschnik-Lilienthal, USSR 1967. White stands much better.

D

| | 5 | c4 |

This continuation gives Black no difficulties at all.

| | 5 | ... | c6 |

The simplest way of equalising. Not so reliable is 5 ... b5?! 6 ♘c3! bc 7 ♗xc4 ♗d6 8 d4 ♘bd7 and now instead of 9 ♘e2? as in Sämisch-Thelen, Prague 1943, White could have obtained a small plus with 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♘e5 ♘xe5 11 de ♘xe5 12 ♗xf4.

| | 6 | d4 |

a) The attempt to win a pawn is unsatisfactory for White: 6 dc? ♘xc6 7 d4 ♗g4 8 d5 ♗xf3 9 ♕xf3 ♘e5 10 ♕xf4 ♗d6 with a strong attack.

b) Interesting, on the other hand, is 6 ♘e3 dc 7 cd?! ♗d6 (more hopeful is the simple 7 ... ♘xd5 8 ♗c4 ♘xc3) 8 ♗b5+ (obviously stronger is 8 ♗c4 0-0 9 0-0 ♗g4 10 d4 ♘bd7 11 ♕d3) 8 ... ♘bd7 9 ♕c2+ ♔e7 10 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 11 0-0 ♖d8 12 d4 ♘b6 with good play for Black.

D1 6 ... cd
D2 6 ... ♗b4+

D1

| | 6 | ... | cd |

It is because of this move that 6 ... ♗b4+ is commonly considered

ssential for Black. However ...

| | 7 | ... | ♘c6 |

Better than 7 ... b6 8 b4 a5 9 ♘e5 ♗d7 10 ♘xd7 ♕xd7 11 ♘c3! (Keres) 11 ... ab 12 ♗b5 ♘c6 13 ♘a4 and White obtains a big advantage.

| | 8 | ♗xf4 | ♗e7 |
| | 9 | ♘c3 | 0-0 |

10 ♗b5 ♘e4 11 0-0 ♗g4 12 ♕a4 ♗xf3! 13 gf (otherwise 13 ... ♘xd4) 13 ... ♘g5 14 ♗g3 ♘e5 and Black has excellent counterplay, Tolush-Averbakh, Leningrad 1959.

D2

	6	...	♗b4+
	7	♘c3	cd
	8	♗xf4	0-0
	9	♗e2

This is stronger than 9 ♗d3, if only because it forces Black to take immediately on c4, whereas after 9 ♗d3 he has the choice between 9 ... dc and 9 ... ♖e8+ 10 ♗e5 ♘c6 11 0-0 ♘xe5 12 ♘xe5 dc 13 ♗xc4 ♗e6 with an equal game (Keres).

| | 9 | ... | dc |
| | 10 | ♗xc4 (36) |
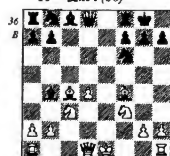
And now:

D21 10 ... ♖e8+
D22 10 ... ♗g4!?
D23 10 ... ♘d5!

D21

| | 10 | ... | ♖e8+ |
| | 11 | ♗e5 |

11 ♘e5 ♘c6 12 ♗xe6 ♖xe6 13 0-0 ♗xc3 14 bc ♘c6 brings us by transposition to a position from the game Sämisch-Schmidt, Prague 1943, where Black has an excellent game.

	11	...	♘c6
	12	0-0	♘xe5
	13	♘xe5

After 13 dc? ♕xd1+ 14 ♖axd1 ♘g4 15 ♘g5 ♗c6! White cannot avoid losing material.

| | 13 | ... | ♗e6 |

and we have reached the position assessed by Keres as equal in our note to White's 9th move.

D22

| | 10 | ... | ♗g4!? |

An interesting possibility first tried out in the game Bronstein-Nikolayevsky, Leningrad 1971.

| | 11 | 0-0 | 0-0 |
| | 12 | a3 |

12 d5 ♗c5- 13 ♔h1 ♘d4 14 ♕d3 ♘xf3 15 gf ♔h3 is not very attractive for White.

	12	...	♗a5
	13	♗g5	♗xf3
	14	♖xf3	♕xd4-
	15	♕xd4

Draw agreed.

D23

10 ...   ♘d5!

It is strange that this logical move has escaped the attention of theoreticians and practitioners for such a long time.

11 ♗d2

Black gains the advantage after both:

a) 11 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 12 0-0 ♗xc3 13 bc ♘c6 and

b) 11 ♗g5? ♘xc3! 12 bc ♗xc3+ 13 ♔f2 ♕c7.

11 ...   ♘b6

It is precisely this move and not 11 ... ♗xc3 12 bc ♖c8+ 13 ♘e5 ♕h4+ 14 g3 ♕e4+ 15 ♔f2 ♕f5+ 16 ♕f3 (Obukhovsky-Makovsky, Moscow 1960), that gives Black the better game.

Now after, for example, 12 ♗e2 (on 12 ♗b3 there could follow 12 ... ♖e8+ 13 ♘e5 ♗e6 with advantage to Black) 12 ... ♘c6 White is in serious difficulties over the defence of his d-pawn.

11   The Cunningham Gambit

1	e4	e5	A 4 ♗c4
2	f4	ef	B 4 ♘c3
3	♘f3	♗e7	C 4 ♗e2

This defence, suggested by A. Cunningham at the beginning of the 18th century, was for a very long time considered not totally correct, but its popularity during the post-war years of the 20th century, made 3 ... ♗e7 into one of the most fashionable replies to the King's Knight's Gambit.

The most recent research reveals, however, that it is not so simple for Black to achieve equality with this move.

Editor's note: Alexander Cunningham (1654-1737) was born in Scotland. A diplomat and historian, he was British Minister to the Republic of Venice from 1715 to 1720. Cunningham popularised the line which was first attributed to him in Bertin's *The Noble Game of Chess*, London 1735.

A

4 ♗c4

This was for long considered forced because of the threat of the check on h4. Nowadays preference is given to 4 ♘c3 (see B).

A1 4 ... ♗h4+

A2 4 ... ♘f6

A1

4 ...   ♗h4+ (37)
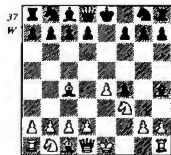
A11 5 g3?!

A12 5 ♗f1

A11

5   g3?!

This adventurous move was often used in the last century.

5   ...   fg
6   0-0   gh+
7   ♔h1

And now:

A111 7 ... ♘h6?

A112 7 ... d5!

A111

7   ...   ♘h6?

A little-studied continuation, which after the game Baretić-Uremović, Yugoslavia 1957, is hardly likely to find any more supporters.

8   d4   d5
9   ♗xd5

A new move. The old line, 9 ♗xh6 dc 10 ♘e5 0-0 leads to unclear play.

9   ...   ♗h3

It was apparently because of this move, winning the exchange, that 10 ♗xd5 was never played.

10   ♗xh6   ♗xf1
11   ♕xf1!

11 ♗xg7? would lead to unnecessary complications stemming from the opening of the g-file, e.g. 11 ... ♖g8 12 ♗xb7 ♗h3 13 ♗e5 ♘d7 14 ♗xa8 ♘xe5 and White stands badly.

11   ...   0-0

11 ... gh? loses to 12 ♗xf7+!.

12   ♕g2   ♕f6
13   ♗e3

Simpler is 13 ♗xg7 and White is left with an extra piece.

13   ...   c6
14   ♘c3   cd
15 ♘xd5 ♕d8 16 ♘xh4 ♕xh4 17 ♗g5 ♕h5 18 ♘f4 1-0.

A112

7   ...   d5!

The only way to refute White's idea.

8   ed!

Or 8 ♗xd5 ♘f6 and now Black gets the better position after both
a) 9 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 10 ♘xh4 ♖f8 11 ♘c3 ♕g8, and
b) 9 ♘xh4 ♗xd5 10 ed ♕xh4 11 ♕e2+ ♔d8 12 ♕xh2 ♕xh2+ 13 ♔xh2 f6.

8   ...   ♗f6!
9   d4   ♘e7

10 ♗g5 ♗f5 11 ♘c3 ♗g6 12 ♗f4 0-0 and Black retains an extra pawn and a strong position.

A12

5   ♔f1   d5

Other means of defence are inferior:
a) 5 ... d6 6 d4 ♗g4 7 ♗xf4 ♘f6 8 ♗e3 ♘e7 (or 8 ... ♘c6 9 c3 ♗e3 ♘e7) 9 ♘bd2 h6 10 h3 ♗xf3 11 ♘xf3 ♘d7 12 ♖g1 ♗g3 13 ♕d2 White has the advantage;
b) 5 ... ♗f6 and now:
b1) 6 d4 g5 7 h4 and 8 ♘e5 (Keres).
b2) less good is Bilguer's recommendation 6 e5 ♗e7 7 d4 d5 8 ♗e2 when now Black has 8 ... f6! with chances of equalising.

6   ♗xd5   ♘f6 (38)
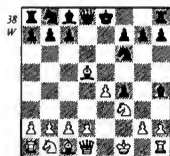
7   ♘c3

Besides this last move of White's 7 ♗b3! deserves serious attention. It is obvious that 7 ... ♘xe4 leads to the loss of a piece, whilst after 7 ... ♗g4 8 d3! (8 ♗xf7+? leaves White behind in development) Black has great difficulties defending his pawn on f4.

7   ...   ♘xd5

[.]The move 7 ... 0-0?! was tried out in a correspondence game Larsson-Kretschmar, 1962, which continued 8 d4 ♘xd5 (not good is 8 ... c6 9 ♗b3 ♗g4 10 ♗xf4) 9 ♘xd5 f5 10 ♘xh4 fe (10 ... ♕xh4 is bad because of 11 e5 but 10 ... f3!? – Keres – deserves attention) 11 ♕h5 ♗e6 12 c4 c6 13 ♘xf4. Now after 13 ... ♕xd4! an interesting position could have arisen with good possibilities for Black (Keres).

The variations given above are quite interesting in themselves,

mendation 6 e5 ♗e7 7 d4 d5 8 ♗e2 when now Black has 8 ... f6! with chances of equalising.

but after the prosaic 8 d3! (instead of 8 d4?) Black's tactical chances disappear and he is left with the worse position.

8   ♗xd5   f5
9   ♘xh4   ♕xh4
10   ♘c7+   ♔d8
11   ♘xa8   fe
12   ♕e1   ♕h5! (39)
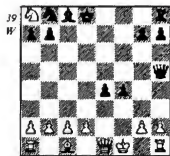
Weaker here is 12 ... ♕e7, when according to Lowtzky's analysis, White gets the advantage: 13 ♕f2 ♘c6 14 b4 ♘xb4 (White threatened 15 b5 or 15 ♗c5) 15 ♕h4+ ♔d7 16 ♕g4+ ♔d8 17 ♕xg7 etc.

Instead of 14 ... ♕xb4? Black can try and confuse his opponent with 14 ... c3! which requires accurate play from White: 15 ♕e1! (bad is 15 de? fe 16 ♕xe3 ♕f6+ or 16 ♗xe3 ♖f8 17 ♖d1+ ♗d7 18 ♗f4 g5) 15 ... ♘d4 16 de fe 17 ♗xe3 ♘xc2 18 ♕d2+ ♔e8 19 ♕xc2 and White wins.

13   ♕xe4   ♖e8
14   ♕f3   ♕e5
15   ♔f2   ♕c5+
16   ♔f1

So far Anderson-Horseman,

British Ch, Nottingham 1954. Here Horseman wrongly declined to repeat moves by playing 16 ... ♘c6? and quickly found himself in a lost position: 17 ♘c7 ♔xc7 18 d4 ♕c4+ 19 ♔d3 etc.

By playing 16 ... ♖e5! Black would have set his opponent the difficult problem of whether to go in for 17 ♕?2!? and withstand a strong attack after 17 ... f3!.

A2

4 ... ♘f6

At one time this was thought to be practically a refutation of the King's Gambit. Now several lines have been found which preserve the initiative for White.

A21 5 ♘c3?!
A22 5 ♕e2
A23 5 e5

Of course, White cannot achieve anything after 5 d3 d5 6 ed ♘xd5 7 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 8 ♗xf4 0-0!.

A21

5 ♘c3?!

This requires accurate play from Black.

5 ... ♘xe4!
6 ♘e5 (40)

The remaining possibilities are even worse for White:

a) 6 ♘xe4 d5 7 ♗d3 de 8 ♗xe4 f5 9 ♗d3 d6 10 ♕e2 ♘c6 11 c3 ♗d7 12 ♗c2 0-0-0 13 0-0 g5 Stoltz-Reicher, Bucharest 1953.

b) 6 0-0 and now:
b1) 6 ... ♘xc3? 7 dc 0-0 8 ♗xf4

From the diagram Black has:
A211 6 ... ♘d6
A212 6 ... d5!
A213 6 ... ♗h4+
A214 6 ... ♘g5!

A211

6 ... ♘d6
7 ♗b3 ♗h4+

7 ... ♘c6 8 d4 0-0 9 0-0 also leads

gives White an attack;
b2) 6 ... ♘f6! 7 d4 d5 8 ♗d3 0-0 9 ♗xf4 ♘c6 and White has no compensation for the pawn (Keres).
c) 6 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 7 ♘e5+:
c1) 7 ... ♔e6 with the further subdivision:
c11) 8 ♘xe4 d5 9 ♕g4+ ♔xe5 10 d4+ ♔xd4 11 c3+ White has a winning attack, Lutikov-Korchnoi, Leningrad 1951;
c12) 8 d4 ♘xc3 9 ♕g4+ ♔d5 10 bc ♖f8 11 ♗xf4 ♖xf4 12 ♕xf4 ♗f6 13 0-0 ♕g8 14 ♖ae1 c5 15 c4+ ♔e6 16 ♕g6+ ♔f7 17 ♖e7+ ♔f8 18 ♕xf6+ gf 19 ♖xf6+ 1-0, Eggink-Sassen, Holland 1951.
c2) 7 ... ♔g8 8 ♘xe4 ♗h4+ 9 g3 ♕e7! (Panov).

to a difficult position for Black, e.g.:
a) 9 ... ♘xe5 10 de ♘e8 11 ♗xf4 d6 12 ♕h5 ce 13 ♗xe5 ♗c6 Kozlov-Gorshkov, Moscow 1955.
b) 9 ... ♘e8 10 ♗xf4 ♘f6 11 ♕d5 ♘xd5 12 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 13 ♗xd5 ♗h6 14 ♕h5 ♕f8 15 ♗xc7 g6 16 ♕f3 ♔g7 17 ♗xf7 ♕xf7 18 ♗e5 and White is winning, Novikov-Bykov, Leningrad 1956.

8 g3 fg
9 0-0 gh+
10 ♔h1 ♘f6

10 ... 0-0?! (Euwe) when:
a) 11 ♕h5? ♕g5! (Stein-Mosterman, Beverwijk 1957) and now after 12 ♘xf7 ♘xf7 13 ♗xf7+ ♔h8 Black gets the advantage.
b) Stronger is 11 d4! ♘f6 12 ♕h5 ♘c6 13 ♖f3! in order to answer 13 ... h6? with 14 ♗xh6 and 13 ... g6 with 14 ♘xg6 (Van der Tak).

In all these variations Black has to conduct a difficult and sometimes hopeless defence.

11 d4 b6
12 ♕h5 ♗b7+
13 ♔xh2 g6

On 13 ... 0-0 there might follow 14 ♕g4 ♘c6 15 ♗g5! ♕xg5 16 ♗xf7+ ♔h8 17 ♗g6 and White wins.

14 ♕h6 ♗g7?!
15 ♘xf7! ♗xh6

16 ♘xd6+ cd 17 ♗f7+ ♔e7 18 ♗xh6 ♕g8 19 ♗xg8 1-0 was the game Podgorny-Stulik from the Czechoslovak Ch, Šumperka Semi-final 1956.

A212

6 ... d5!

This leads to interesting play.

7 ♗xd5 ♘xc3
8 ♗xf7+ ♔f8
9 bc ♗d6

Black stands worse after 9 ... ♘c6 10 ♘xc6 bc 11 ♗c4 ♗h4+ 12 ♔f1.

After the text move, 9 ... ♗d6, curious complications arose in Schuster-Karl, West Germany 1957.

10 0-0 ♗xe5
11 ♗a3+ ♔xf7?

This is not the correct move! 11 ... c5 12 ♗xc5+ ♗d6 13 ♕h5 ♕c7 would have made White's attack look very dubious. The continuation of the Schuster-Karl game was however, quite interesting.

12 ♕h5+ ♔f6

Both the following lose:
a) 12 ... g6 13 ♕xe5 ♖e8 14 ♕xf4+ ♔g7 15 ♕f7+ ♔h8 16 ♗b2 ♘c6 17 c4+ ♘d4 18 ♖ae1 ♖xe1 19 ♖xe1 ♗f5 20 ♖e8+, and
b) 12 ... ♔g8 13 ♕xe5 ♘c6 14 ♕e4 h6 15 ♖xf4 ♗d7 16 ♖f8+ ♕xf8 17 ♗xf8 ♖xf8 18 ♕d5+ etc. In this variation pointed out by Schuster, both 16 ♕d5+ ♔h7 17 ♕d3+ ♔g8 18 ♖f8+! and the simple 16 ♖af1 are stronger.

13 ♖ae1 ♗f5
14 ♖xe5 ♔xe5

15 ♕f7 ♕xd2 16 ♗c1 ♕xc1 17 ♖xc1 ♘c6 18 ♖e1+ and White wins.

A213

6 ... ♗h4+

This is the worst of Black's choices on the sixth move.

7 g3 ♕e7

A correspondence game, Keres-Villard, 1932, went 7 ... fg 8 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 9 0-0 gh+ 10 ♔xh2 ♗g3+ 11 ♔g2 ♕h4 12 ♘f3 1-0.

8 0-0 ♕xe5

and now the correspondence game Noordijk-Thomas, 1947-8, continued: 9 d4 ♘xc3 10 bc ♕a5 11 ♗xf7+! ♔xf7 12 gh ♖f8 13 ♖xf4+ ♔g8 14 ♖xf8+ ♔xf8 15 ♕f3+ ♔g8 16 ♗h6! ♕b6 17 ♖f1 ♕g6+ 18 ♔h1 ♕e8 19 ♗xg7 d5 20 ♗h6 ♘d7 21 ♖g1+ 1-0.

A214

6 ... ♘g5!
7 d4 d6
8 ♗d3 f3!

Even stronger than 8 ... c6 9 ♘xf4 d5 10 ♗d3 ♘d7 11 ♘h5 gh and Black is a pawn up, Sydor-Kwilecki, Poznan 1955.

9 gf ♗h3
10 ♗e3 0-0

White is a pawn down and, in view of the possible 11 ... ♗h4+, does not have time to castle queen-side.

A22

5 ♕e2 d5

5 ... 0-0 6 d4 d5 7 ed ♗d6 8 0-0 ♗g4 is possible, transposing to a position similar to variation B1 of Chapter 10. The extra move made by White (his queen stands on e2 and Black has lost a tempo through ... ♗e7-d6) has no real significance.

6 ed ♘xd5
7 ♘c3 ♘xc3?!

7 ... ♗e6 is probably better.

8 bc

8 dc! deserves serious attention. After 8 ... 0-0 9 ♗xf4 White is considerably ahead of Black in development. Black cannot, for example, play 9 ... ♖e8? because of 10 ♘e5 when White stands well. Equally, after 9 ... ♗c5 10 ♗g5! Dementiev-Vasiliev, USSR 1972, White had a sizeable advantage.

8 ... 0-0
9 0-0
A221 9 ... ♘d7
A222 9 ... ♘c6

A221

9 ... ♘d7
10 d4 ♗d6
11 ♗b3 (41)

Black has a more difficult game than in A222.

From the diagram, Black has tried:

a) 11 ... ♖e8 12 ♕c4 ♕f6 (losing is 12 ... ♕e7 13 ♖e1 ♕f8 14 ♕xf7+) 13 ♘g5 ♖e7 14 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 (stronger of course is 14 ... ♕xf7! 15 ♕d3 ♘c6 16 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 17 ♖xf4 ♕xf4 and Black comes out a piece up) 15 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 16 ♖xf4 ♕xf4 17 ♖f1 ♕e3+ 18 ♔h1 ♕e8 19 ♖xf7 ♔h8 20 ♖e7 ♕f8 21 ♖f7 with a probable draw.

b) White won in roughly the same style in the correspondence game Dukur-Flattum, 1970: 11 ... c6 12 ♗d2 ♕c7 13 ♖ae1 a5? 14 ♘g5 ♘f6 15 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 16 ♗xf4 and now 16 ... ♗xf4? is not playable because of mate in two, and if 16 ... ♗g4, then 17 ♗xd6 ♗xe2 18 ♖xf6! etc.

A222

9 ... ♘c6
10 d4 ♗d6

Black has a good position.

A23

5 e5 ♘g4 (42)

White now has a choice of four moves:

A231 6 d4?
A232 6 0-0
A233 6 ♕e2
A234 6 ♘c3

A231

6 d4? d5
7 ♗d3

Or 7 ♗b3 ♗h4+ 8 ♔f1 b6! with the unpleasant threat of 9 ... ♗a6+, Kramer-Euwe, match 1941.

7 ... ♗b4+
8 ♗e2 ♘f2

9 ♕e1 ♘xd3 10 ♕xh4 ♘xc1+ 11 ♖xh4 ♘xh4 ♘c6 13 c3 0-0 14 ♔f2 f6 with advantage to Black, Lutikov-Estrin, USSR 1951.

A232

6 0-0 ♘c6

Less good is 6 ... d6 7 ed and now:

a) 7 ... ♕xd6 8 d4 0-0 9 ♘c3 ♘e3 10 ♗xe3 fe, Bronstein-Koblents, Moscow 1945, and now, according to Boleslavsky's analysis, White could have obtained an advantage with 11 ♕b5 ♕d8 12 ♗c5 ♗e6 13 ♗xe6 fe 14 ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 15 ♕g4.

b) 7 ... ♗xd6 8 ♖e1+ ♔f8 9 d4 g5 Hindre-Rozenfeld, Tallinn 1949. Keres considers that after 10 h3 White has the advantage.

7 d4

7 ♖e1? is not playable because of 7 ... ♗c5- 8 d4 ♘xd4! 9 ♘xd4 ♕h4 and Black wins.

7 ... d5

8   ♗b3

It may be that the alternative, 8 ed ♗xd6 is better for White:

a) 9 ♖e1+? and now:

a1) 9 ... ♘e7 10 h3 ♘h6 11 ♘e5 ♗xe5 12 ♖xe5 ♘hf5 13 c3 0-0 with a good game for Black (Euwe).

a2) 9 ... ♔f8 10 h3 ♗h6 followed by 11 ... g5 with attacking chances.

b) 9 ♘c3? did not justify itself in Keres-Alatortsev, 18th USSR Ch, Moscow 1950: 9 ... 0-0 10 ♘g4 ♘e3 11 ♗xe3 fe with the better chances for Black.

c) 9 ♕e1+! ♘e7 10 h3 ♘h6 11 ♘e5 g5 12 h4 f6 13 hg fg is unclear (Korchnoi).

8   ...   g5

This is Euwe's recommendation.

8 ... ♘e3 is quieter.

9   ♘c6   ♗c6

9 ... dc 10 ♗xc4 ♘xd4 11 ♕xd4 ♕xd4 12 ♘xd4 ♗c5 13 ♖d1 ♘xe5 and Black wins – Euwe.

10   cd   ♗xd5
11   ♗xd5   ♕xd5
12   ♘c3   ♕d7

13 h3 h5! 14 hg hg 15 ♘h2 and now the unnecessary sacrifice, 15 ... ♖xh2? was played in the game V.Shcherbakov-Tselikov, Moscow 1957. After the simple 15 ... g3! Black has a very strong attack.

A233

6   ♕e2

This move too should not trouble Black.

6   ...   0-0
7   d4   d6

8   ♗xf4   de
9   de   ♘c6
10   ♘c3   ♘d4
11   ♘xd4   ♕xd4
12   ♗d5   ♗xf4+!

More interesting than 12... ♗c5 13 c3 ♕f2+ 14 ♔xf2 ♗xf2+ 15 ♔e2 ♗b6 16 ♘f3 ♖e8 17 ♘xb6 ab 18 e6 and White won, Cheremisin-Kuzin, Moscow 1957.

13   g3   ♕xb2
14   ♖d1

14 0-0 would be met by 14 ... ♗d8 15 h3 c6 in Black's favour.

14   ...   c6

After the quiet 14 ... ♗d8 it is not easy for White to show he has compensation for the pawn.

15   ♘e7   ♕b4+

16 ♗d2 ♕e7 17 ♘xa8 ♖xe5 18 0-0 ♗g4 19 ♗b4 ♗xc2 20 ♗xc7 ♗xc7 21 ♘xc4 ♖xa8 ½-½, Pietzsch-Fuchs, E. Germany 1961. The final position is preferable for Black.

A234

6   ♘c3

A2341 6 ... ♗h4+!?
A2342 6 ... ♘c6
A2343 6 ... d6

A2341

6   ...   ♗h4+!?
7   ♔f1!

Pupel-Ivanov, Riga 1959, went 7 g3?! fg 8 0-0 ♘f2 9 ♕e2 ♘h3+ 10 ♔h1 ♘f4 11 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 12 ♗b3 ♗f6? (12 ... ♘xe2 would have

drawn) 13 ef ♘xe2 14 ♗xe2 g2+ 15 ♔xg2 d5 16 d4 ♗f5 17 ♘g3 ♗g6 18 ♘g5 ♕d7 19 ♗d2 ♘c6 20 ♖ae1 h6? (more solid was 20 ... ♖c8) 21 ♘c6-- ♔g8 22 fg and White won.

7   ...   ♘f6

Or 7 ... d6 8 cd cd 9 ♕e2+ ♗e7 10 d4 with advantage to White.

8   ♕e2   ♗e7
9   c6   ♘h6
10   g4   ♗f6

with an equal game. Glaskov gives the weaker 10 ... fg? 11 hg ♘f5 12 ef+ ♔hf   g2 with a strong attack fo   e.

A2342

6   ...   ♘c6
7   d4   d5?!

This interesting sacrifice was tried out in Wade-Bouwmeester, Clare Benedict, Mont Pelerin sur Vevey 1955, which the text now follows.

The more solid 7 ... d6 transposes to A2343.

8   ♘xd5   ♗h4+
9   ♔f1   ♘a5

10 b3 c6 11 ♘xf4 ♘xc4 12 bc ♕d3+ 13 ♔e1 ♘xh1 14 ♔f2 ♗xh4 15 ♘xh4 g5 16 ♘h5 gh 17 d5 h6 18 ♗f6+ ♔d8, and now White could have got an advantage with 19 ♘e4! instead of 19 ♘h6?.

A2343

6   ...   d6

6 ... d5?! is an interesting pawn sacrifice but, according to Keres,

unsound. White should play 7 ♗xd5! ♗h4+ 8 ♔f1 ♘c6 9 ♗xc6+ bc 10 d3 0-0 11 ♘c3 ♘e7 12 c6 f5 13 ♘xh4 ♕xh4 14 ♕e1 and it is doubtful if Black has enough for the pawn.

7   d4   de

Inadequate here is 7 ... ♗h4+?8 ♔f1 ♘e3+9 ♗xe3 fe 10 ♕d3 ♗g5 11 ed! (Euwe gives an inferior variation here: 11 ♘d5? c6 12 ♘xe3 d5 13 ♗b3 0-0 with an equal game) 11 ... c6 (11 ... ed 12 ♕e4+ ♗e7 13 ♗g5 with a won position for White, Lenta-Bulgakov, corres 1971) 12 ♕e4+ ♔f8 13 ♖e1, Szewszyk-Hannemann, corres 1975.

8   de   ♕xd1+
9   ♔xd1   ♗e6

10 ♗xe6 fe 11 h3 ♘h6 12 ♗xf4 ♗h6 13 ♘e3 0-0 14 c3 ♖hf8 15 ♗xh6 gh 16 ♖d1 ♗g5 and White's position was preferable, Bronstein-Kholmov, training game, Moscow 1961. Korchnoi suggests 12 ... ♘f5 as an equalising move for Black.

B

4   ♘c3

The modern line. It became popular in recent years after theoretical analysis and tournament practice had shown that White cannot obtain an advantage with 4 ♗c4. With 4 ♘c3 White strengthens his centre and hinders the advance ... d5 by Black, without worrying about losing the right to castle.

B1 4 ... ♗h4+
B2 4 ... ♘f6

B1

4 ... &h4+
5 &e2 d5

There are numerous other possibilities:

a) 5 ... &e7 6 d4 g5 7 h4 g4 8 &e1 &xh4 9 &xf4 with advantage to White (Keres). Balashov-Agzamov, USSR Ch 1983, saw Black trying 6 ... &f6 but after 7 &xf4 d5 8 &xd5 &xd5 9 ed &xd5 10 &f2 &d8 11 &c4 0-0 12 &e1 &g4 13 &b3! &xf3 14 &xf3 &xd4+ 15 &f1 and White had more than enough compensation for the pawn.

b) 5 ... f5 6 d3 fe 7 de d6 8 &xf4 with the better position for White.

c) 5 ... &g5 6 d4 (probably stronger is 6 d3! with the threats of 7 g3 and 7 &d5) 6 ... &h6 7 &f2 &f6 (if 7 ... g5 8 &xc4 d6 9 h4! g4 10 &g5) 8 &c4 &g4+ 9 &g1 0-0 10 h3 &e3 11 &xe3 fe 12 &h2 followed by 13 &f1 with the better position for White (Euwe).

d) 5 ... d6 (Euwe) 6 d4 &g4 7 &xf4 &c6 'and Black has most of his pieces in play, while it is a question as to how White can continue his development' - Euwe. 8 &d3 (8 h3 &xf3+ 9 gf &d7 10 &d5 0-0-0? 11 &g5! &xg5 12 h4, Bashina-Katskova, 1969, with a very good position for White - Keres) 8 ... &g5, Popovych-Kaufman, USA Ch 1972, and now 9 &g3! with advantage to White. In Planinc-Ivkov, Yugoslav Ch 1978, Black tried 8 ... &ge7 but after 9 &d2 &xf3 10 gf &d7 11 &d1 0-0-0 12

&c1 White had reached a solid position.

e) 5 ... c6 6 d4 d5 7 e5 &g4 8 &xf4 f6! 9 g3 fe 10 &xe5 &f6 11 &g2 &xe5 12 de &e7 with an unclear position (P.Ivanov).

6 &xd5 &f6
7 &xf6+

a) 7 &xh4? loses to 7 ... &xc4.
b) On 7 &c3 strong is 7 ... &g4 8 d4 &f2 9 &c1 &g4.

7 ... &xf6
8 d4 (43)
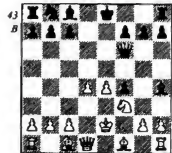
8 e5 is probably a little premature. Black should not answer 8 ... &e7 9 d4 0-0 10 g3 &g5 11 gf &h6 12 &e1, Prins-Zuidema, Holland 1965, with advantage to White, but 8 ... &a6+ 9 d3 &g4 10 &xf4 &c6 11 c3 0-0-0 (unclear, Euwe).

B11 8 ... 0-0
B12 8 ... &c6

B11

8 ... 0-0

This was played in Hartston-J.E.Littlewood, Ilford 1965. Black castles short with the intention of

stationing his rooks on the queen- and king-files so as to create pressure against White's centre.

9 &d3

9 &d2 is not dangerous, because of 9 ... &e8 10 e5 &g4 11 &xf4 &xf4 12 &xf4 c5! with a good position for Black.

9 ... &g4
10 e5 &b6
11 &xf4

A plausible move, but not the strongest. 11 g3! would have set Black difficult problems.

The game continued: 11 ... &c6 12 &d1 &ad8 13 c3 &fe8 14 g3 &f6 and Black stands well, e.g. 15 &c2 &xe5 16 de &xe5.

B12

8 ... &c6
9 c3 &g4
10 &d2!

Stronger than 10 &d3? as played in Kavalek-Herink, Czechoslovakia 1959: 10 ... 0-0-0 11 &c2 &he8 12 &d3 &f2 13 &f1 &xf3 14 gf &xd4 15 cd &b4+ 16 &b1 &xd4 17 &c2 &xc2 18 &xc2 &c6+ 19 &b1 &dxe4! with advantage to Black.

10 ... g5
11 &d1!

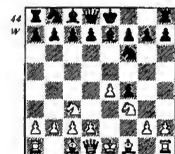No good is the obvious 11 &d3? because of 11 ... &xf3 12 gf &e5+.

11 ... 0-0-0
12 &c2 &h6

Thanks to his strong centre White stands better, e.g. 13 &xh4 &xh4 14 g3!.

B2

4 ... &f6 (44)

B21 5 d4
B22 5 e5

B21

5 d4

White cannot really hope for any advantage with this move.

5 ... d5
6 &d3

Alternatives for White are:

a) 6 ed &xd5 7 &c4 &c6 8 &c2 &xc3 9 bc &xc4 10 &xc4 &d6 11 &b5+ &d7 12 &xb7 &e7+ 13 &f2 0-0 14 &e1 &f6 15 c4 Spassky-Liberzon, Leningrad 1960. Black's chances are not worse. Editor's note: The game was drawn after 15 ... &ab8 16 &c6 &b4 17 &xd7 &xd8 18 &xc7 &xe1- 19 &xe1 &xd4! 20 &f2 &e4 21 &b1 &c3 22 &b8 &xc2+ 23 &d2 g6 24 h4 &xc4 25 &xa7 &xe8 26 &xe8 &xe8 27 a4 h6 28 &d7 &e2+ 29 &g1 &c5+ 30 &b2 &f2 31 &c8+ &h7 32 &g4 &xd2 33 &xd2 &xd2 34 h5 ½-½.

b) An interesting possibility which

has not been tested in practice yet is 6 e5 ♘e4 7 ♗d3! (after 7 ♘xf4 ♗b4 we have a variation of the Vienna game which is unfavourable to White) 7 ... ♗b4 8 0-0! (this is the point of White's last move) 8 ... ♕xc3 9 bc ♗xc3 10 ♖b1 ♘c6 11 ♗xf4 ♘xd4 12 ♗g5 ♕f5 13 ♘xf7 with a very strong attack for White. It would seem that Black should play 7 ... f5 instead of 7 ... ♗b4?.

| | 6 | ... | de |
| | 7 | ♘xe4 | ♘c6! |

7 ... ♘xe4? 8 ♗xe4 ♗d6 9 0-0 ♘d7 10 ♕d3 h6 11 c4 c5 12 b4! cd (or 12 ... cb 13 c5 ♗c7 14 c6 bc 15 ♗xc6 ♖b8 16 ♖e1+ etc. – Keres) 13 c5 ♗e7 14 ♗xf4 0-0 15 ♘xd4 ♘f6 Spassky-Najdorf, Varna Ol 1962, and now White could have obtained the advantage with 16 ♖ad1!. *Editor's note: Instead the game went 16 ♖ae1 a5 17 a3 ab 18 ab ♕xd4 19 ♕c3 ♘xe4 20 ♖xe4 ♗f6 21 ♖d6 ♖e8 22 ♖ef4 ♗xd4+ 23 ♕xd4 ♕e6 24 ♗e5 ♕xd4+ 25 ♖xd4 ♖a2 26 ♖f2 ♖a1+ 27 ♖f1 ½-½.*

| | 8 | ♗xf4 | 0-0 |
| | 9 | c3 | ♘xe4 |

10 ♗xe4 ♘h4+! 11 ♔f1 ♗g4 12 ♕d3 ♔h8 and Black can be satisfied with the result of the opening, Lukin-Faibisovich, Leningrad 1967.

B22

| | 5 | e5 | ♘g4 |
| | 6 | d4 | |

White can reach the position from Bronstein-Kholmov (A234) by playing 6 ♗c4.

	6	...	♘e3
	7	♗xe3	fe
	8	♗c4	♘c6
	9	0-0	0-0
	10	♕d3	♘c6
	11	ed	♘xd6

and if 12 ♘e4, then 12 ... ♗e7!

In Spassky-Kholmov, 31st USSR Ch zonal play-off, Moscow 1964, the unnecessary 11 ... cd? was played and White obtained a small, but lasting advantage: 12 ♖ae1 ♗g4 13 ♖xe3 ♔h8 14 ♘d5 ♗g5 15 ♘xg5 ♕xg5 16 ♖g3 ♕h5 17 ♘e3 ♗d7 18 ♘f5 and White stands better. *Editor's note: White soon converted his advantage: 18 ... ♗xf5 19 ♖xf5 ♕h4 20 c3 ♕e7 21 ♖e3 ♕d7 22 ♖ef3 ♘d8 (22 ... f6 23 ♖h5 ♕e6 24 ♕e4! g6 (or 23 ... ♖e8 24 ♗d3 g6 25 ♖f6 also wins) 24 ♕h4! ♕g8 25 ♖xf7 1-0.*

C

| | 4 | ♗e2 | |

It is difficult for White to count on obtaining any opening advantage with this little-analysed move. Nonetheless, in this variation too, Black must tread with a certain caution.

| | 4 | ... | ♘f6 |

This seems to be the strongest. Other tries are:

a) 4 ... ♗b4+ 5 ♔f1 ♗e7 6 d4 g5 7 h4 g4 8 ♘e5 h5 9 ♗c4 ♖h7 Solntsev-Vasilchuk, Moscow 1957,

and now 10 ♗xf4! would have given White the advantage.

b) 4 ... d5 5 ed ♘f6 6 0-0-0-0 c4 b5 (on 7 ... c6 there might have followed 8 dc ♘xc6 9 d4 ♗g4 10 d5 ♗xf3 11 ♗xf3 ♘e5 12 ♗xf4 ♘xc4 13 ♘c3 with the better game) 8 cb (8 d3 deserved attention) 8 ... ♘xd5 9 ♘c3 ♗b7 10 d4 c5 11 ♘xd5 ♕xd5 12 ♗xf4 a6 (if 12 ... cd 13 ♗e5) 13 ♖c1 ab 14 ♗xb5 ♕xa2 15 ♗c4 ♕xb2 16 ♖f2 ♕b6 17 ♘e5 ♗a6 18 ♗xf7+ White has a won position, Heuer-Ney, Estonia 1959.

| | 5 | ♘c3 | |

a) Santasiere-McCormick, US Open Ch, New Orleans 1954, developed interestingly: 5 d3 d5 6 e5 ♘g4 7 ♗xf4 f6 8 0-0 ♘c6 9 ef ♗c5+? (this attempt to seize the initiative turns out badly; after the simple 9 ... ♘xf6 the game is even) 10 d4 ♕xf6 11 dc ♕xf4 12 ♘c3 ♗e6 13 ♘xd5 ♗xd5 14 ♕xd5 ♕xc3+ 15 ♔h1 ♘f2+ 16 ♖xf2 ♕xf2 17 ♗b5 and White has a won position.

b) 5 e5 also fails to give White any advantage. Black has either:

b1) 5 ... ♘e4 6 d3 ♘c5 7 ♗xf4 d5 and 8 ... ♘e6 or

b2) 5 ... ♘g4 6 0-0 0-0 7 d4 c5!.

	5	...	d5
	6	ed	♘xd5
	7	♘xd5	♕xd5
	8	d4 (45)	
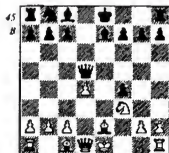
We have now reached a position from variation B2 of the previous chapter (after 3 ... d5 4 ed ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘xd5 etc.), where instead of 8 c4 or 8 ♗d3, which have both had practical trials, White has brought his white-squared bishop out to e2. Comparing these positions we may conclude that the position in diagram 45 is at least no worse for White, and possible even better than those analysed in Chapter 10. White threatens to win back his pawn, and if Black plays 8 ... g5 there follows 9 0-0 with attacking chances for White.

12 Other Third Moves for Black

1	e4	e5
2	f4	ef
3	♘f3	

A 3 ... h6
B 3 ... f5
C 3 ... ♘e7

A

3 ... h6

Along with 3 ... d6 this move can be seen as a secure method of avoiding the Kieseritzky Gambit and forcing White to transpose into variations of the Hanstein Gambit.

4 d4

For 4 ♗c4 g5 5 d4 see A3.

4 ... g5

And now:

A1 5 h4
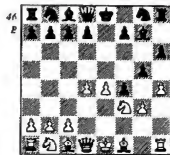A2 5 g3
A3 5 ♗c4

A1

5 h4 ♗g7

A11 6 g3
A12 6 hg

6 ♗c4 d6 transposes to the Philidor Gambit (see Chapter 3).

A11

6 g3 (46)

A111 6 ... d5!
A112 6 ... g4

6 ... d6 7 gf g4 8 ♘g1 is not good enough for equality for Black. White's strong centre assures him some advantage.

A111

6 ... d5!

This move leads to great complications which seem to favour Black.

7 ed g4

After 7 ... ♕xd5 8 hg hg 9 ♖xh8 ♗xh8 10 gf g4 11 ♘e5 White has the advantage.

8 ♘e5 ♕xd5

a) If 8 ... f3 then 9 ♗c4 with unpleasant threats; or even 9 ♗b5+!?.

b) 8 ... fg 9 ♘c3 ♘f6 10 ♗g2 followed by 11 ♕d3.

9 ♖h2 ♗xe5!

And no 9 ... f3? 10 ♘c3 ♕d8 11 ♗f4 ♘c6 12 ♗c4! ♘xe5 (even worse is 12 ... ♕xd4 13 ♗xd4 ♘xd4 14 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 15 0-0-0) 13 de ♕xd1+ 14 ♖xd1 ♗d7 15 ♖hd2 with a large advantage to White.

10 ♖e2 ♘c6
11 ♗xf4 ♕xd4

Advantage to Black (Korchnoi).

A112

6 ... g4
7 ♘h2

7 ♘e5, played in Cheremisin-Volovich, USSR 1964, leads to sharper play. That game went 7 ... d6 8 ♘xf7 ♔xf7 9 ♗c4+ d5? (An unnecessary sacrifice. Now White reaches a favourable variation of the Allgaier with an extra tempo. It is not surprising that Black comes under a tremendous attack) 10 ♗xd5+ ♔e8 11 ♗xf4 ♘e7 12 ♘c3 ♖f8 13 0-0 c6 14 ♗e5! ♗xe5 15 ♖xf8+ ♔xf8 16 ♕f1+ ♘f5 17 ef ♕b6! 18 ♕h2 cd 19 ef ♕xb2 20 ♕f4 ♕xc2+ 21 ♔g1 ♕xf5 22 ♕xh6+ ♔e8 23 ♖f1 ♕xe5 24 ♕f8+ 1-0.

7 ... fg
8 ♘xg4

This is stronger than 8 ♕xg4 gh 9 ♕xg7 ♕xh4+ 10 ♔d1 ♕f6.

8 ... d6

White also has a good position after 8 ... d5 9 e5 ♗f5 10 ♗f4.

9 c3 ♘f6
10 ♘xf6+ ♕xf6
11 ♗e3

Denk-Sämisch, Prague 1943. After, for example, 11 ... ♘c6 12 ♘d2 ♗d7 13 ♕h3 0-0-0 14 0-0-0 White's chances are preferable, despite the fact that he is a pawn down.

A12

6 hg hg
7 ♖xh8 ♗xh8
8 g3 d5

As the game Keres-Soonurm, Tallinn 1942, showed, 8 ... g4 is very risky. The game continued 9 ♘h2 fg 10 ♕xg4 ♗f8 11 ♕xg3 ♗xd4 12 ♘f3 ♗f6 13 e5 ♗e7 14 ♘g5 ♗xg5 15 ♗xg5 ♕e8 16 ♘c3 ♘c6 17 0-0-0 ♕xe5 18 ♗f4 ♕g7 19 ♕h2 d6 20 ♗d6+! cd 21 ♕xd6+ ♔e8 (21 ... ♔ge7 22 ♕d8+!) 22 ♘d5 ♕h6+ 23 ♔b1 ♕xh6+ ♔e8 24 ♘c7+ 1-0.

9 gf

A mistake would be 9 cd ♕c7! Tolush-Furman, Leningrad 1947.

9 ... g4
10 ♘g5 ♗g4
11 f5 ...

After 11 ♘h3 de! Black has the advantage.

```
11  ...      fg
12  ♘xg4     ♗xd4! (47)
```

In Rellstab-Pfeiffer, Hamburg 1954, the weaker 13 ... ♘f6 14 ♕h3 ♗g7 was played, after which 14 ♗xg5 would have posed difficult problems for Black.


```
13  ♘e3      ♗xc3+
14  bc       ♕e7!
```

and Black can easily realise his material advantage.
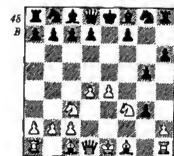
A2
```
5  g3        fg
6  ♘c3!? (48)
```

The aim of this little analysed sharp move is to prevent the advance ... d5 and to catch the Black king in the centre.

After 6 hg ♗g7 7 ♘c3 d6 8 ♗e3 ♗g4 9 ♗g2 ♘c6 10 ♕d2 ♕d7 Black castles long and White's superiority in the centre is not really sufficient compensation for the gambit pawn.

Black now has the following possibilities:

A21 6 ... gh?!
A22 6 ... ♗g7

A23 6 ... g4
A24 6 ... d6

A21
```
6  ...       gh?!
```

This is risky.
```
7  ♖xh2      ♗g7
8  ♗e4       d6
```

9 ♘xg5 hg !0 ♖xh8 ♗xh8 11 ♕h5 ♕f6 12 ♗xg5 ♕g7 13 0-0-0 with a very strong attack.

A22
```
6  ...       ♗g7
```

This occurred, after transposition, in Spassky-Gibbs, Student Ol, Leningrad 1960, which continued:
```
7  hg        d5?
```

There was no need to return the pawn. The sensible move was 7 ... d6 with the idea of transposing into the note after 6 ♘c3?!.
```
8  ♘xd5      ♗g4
```

9 ♗c4 ♘c6 10 ♘e3 ♕d7 11 c3 0-0-0 12 0-0 with advantage to White.
Editor's note: The conclusion was 12 ... ♘f6 13 ♕c2 ♗h3 14 ♖f1 ♘g4 15 ♘f5 ♗f6 16 ♗b5 ♕e8 17 e5 ♗e7 18 ♔h1 ♘f2+ 19 ♔g1 ♘g4 20 ♔h1 ♘f2+ 21 ♔h2 ♗xf5 22 ♕xf5+ ♕d7 23 ♕xd7+ ♖xd7 24 ♔g2 ♘g6 25 ♗d3 1-0.

A23
```
6  ...       g4
7  hg!
```

If 7 ♘e5, 7 ... ♘d3 8 ♘d3 ♕h4 is unpleasant for White.
```
8  ♕xf3      ♘f6
9  ♗f4
```

White has a very strong position for the sacrificed piece.

A24
```
6  ...       d6
7  h4        g4
8  ♘g1
```

And now Black has:
A241 8 ... ♗e7
A242 8 ... g2!?
A243 8 ... ♕f6

A241
```
8  ...       ♗e7
9  ♗g2
```

9 h5 deserves attention.
```
9  ...       ♗xh4
10  ♗f4      ♕f6
11  ♕d2
```

with 12 0-0-0 to follow. For the sacrificed material White has a strong attack against the black king which is stuck in the centre.

A242
```
8  ...       g2!?
9  ♗xg2      ♗e7
10  h5       ♗h4+
11  ♔e2      ♗g5
```

```
12  ♗xg5     ♕xg5
13  ♕d2
```

White can keep the queens on with 13 ♕d3.
```
13  ...      ♕xd2+
```

a) 13 ... ♘e6 14 ♘d5;
b) 13 ... ♘f6 14 ♖f1 and Black cannot play 14 ... ♘xh5 because of 15 ♖xh5 ♕xh5 16 ♘d5 ♕h2 17 ♗d1 ♘a6 18 ♕f2 ♗e6 19 ♘f6+ ♔d8 20 ♘e2 and White has a won position.
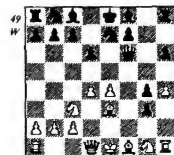```
14 ♔xd2   ♘e7
15 ♘ge2
```

White has fully adequate compensation for the pawn.

A243
```
8  ...       ♕f6
9  ♗e3       ♘e7 (49)
```



```
10  h5!
```

when White's position is preferable.
Bukhman-Emelyanov, Leningrad 1955, saw the weaker 10 ♗g2? played. The game continued 10 ... h5 11 ♘ge2 ♘h6 12 ♖f1 ♕xh4 13 ♕d2 ♗xc3 14 ♘xc3 ♖g8 15 ♘xg3 ♕g5 16 ♕xg5 ♖xg5 17 ♖h1 ♘bc6 18 ♘xh5 f5 19 0-0-0 (stronger is 19
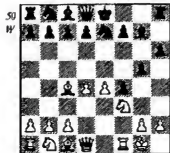
♘b5) 19 ... a6 with equal chances.

A3

```
5   ♗c4      ♗g7
6   0-0
```

Editor's note: Compare this with the Hanstein Gambit (Chapter 4).

White could also play here 6 c3 ♘e7 7 ♗b3! forestalling Black's dangerous counter-blow ... d5. After 7 ... 0-0 8 h4 d5 (stronger is 8 ... ♘g6!) 9 ♗xd5 ♘xd5 10 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 11 ed ♖e8+ 12 ♔f2 White, in Efremov-Abroshin, corres USSR 1954-5, achieved an equal game.

```
6   ...      ♘e7!? (50)
```


7   g3!

This leads to a sharp position. It is difficult to recommend anything else. If 7 ♘c3?! then 7 ... ♘bc6! and White cannot continue 8 g3? because of 8 ... d6 9 gf g4!.

```
7   ...      d5!
```

Alternatives:

a) 7 ... fg? loses to 8 ♗xf7+ or 8 ♗xg5.

b) 7 ... c6? trying to prepare ... d5, is too slow. Barle-Romanishin,

USSR v Yugoslavia, Erevan 1971, continued 8 gf d5 9 ♗b3 g4 10 ♘e5 ♘d7 11 ♘c3 ♘xe5 12 fe ♗e6 13 ed cd 14 ♘b5 0-0 15 ♕d3 ♕d7 16 ♘d6 f6 17 ef ♖xf6 18 ♖xf6 ♗xf6 19 ♗f4 ♖f8 20 ♖e1 ♗g7 21 ♕e3 with a won position for White.

c) 7 ... ♘bc6 led to interesting complications in Orlov-Zaitsev, Moscow 1960: 8 gf g4 9 ♘e5 d5 10 ed ♘xd5 11 ♘c3 ♘ce7 12 f5? (he should have exchanged first, 12 ♘xd5 ♘xd5, and only then played 13 f5!) 12 ... ♗xe5 13 ♘xd5 ♗xh2+ 14 ♔xh2 ♘xd5 15 ♕xg4 ♕d6+ 16 ♔h1 ♗d7 17 ♕c4+ ♘e7 18 f6 ♗c6 19 d5 ♗xd5 20 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 21 ♖e1 ♕h5+ 22 ♕g2 ♖g8+ etc.

```
8   ed          fg!
```

More incisive than 8 ... g4 and 9 ... f3.

```
9   ♘e5       0-0 (51)
```
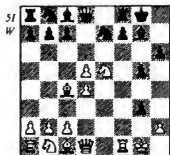

10   ♘xf7!

a) Considerably weaker is 10 ♘e3?! ♘f5 11 ♕d3 ♘d6 with advantage to Black, Arkhangelsk-Grozny, telegraph match 1949.

b) 10 d6? fails to 10 ... ♕xd6 and now:

b1) 11 ♗xf7 gh+ 12 ♔h1 ♕c6+;

b2) 11 ♖xf7 gh+ 12 ♔h1 ♗e6;

b3) 11 ♗xf7+ ♖xf7! 12 ♖xf7 gh+ 13 ♔h1 ♕d5+ 14 ♕f3 (14 ♔xh2 ♘f5) 14 ... ♕xf3+ 15 ♖xf3 ♗f5! 16 ♘e5 ♗e4 (Novotelnov).

The combination in the main variation (10 ♘xf7!) occurred in Kuindzhi-Men, Batumi 1972, after the following order of moves: 6 0-0 d6 7 c3 ♘e7 8 g3 d5! (for 8 ... ♘g6!? see below) 9 ed fg 10 ♘e5! (52) (stronger than 10 hg? ♘f5! with a big advantage to Black in Heuer-Nezhmetdinov, Moscow 1964).
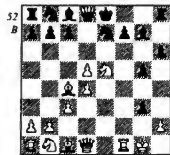

Diagram 52 and diagram 51 are almost identical, the only difference being the position of White's c-pawn. However, in certain cases, having the pawn on c3 is no better than having it on c2. This can be seen, for example, in the variation (diagram 52 with Black having castled – *ed.*) 10 ... gh+ 11 ♔h1 ♗xe5 12 de b5 and White cannot defend his d5 square.

In the game quoted there followed: 10 ... 0-0 11 ♗xf7 gh! 12 ♔h1 ♖xf7 (interesting is 12 ... ♕e8!? 13 ♘xh6+ ♔h7) 13 ♖xf7! (after 13 d6? ♘f5 Black is ahead on material) 13 ... ♕xf7 14 ♗xg5! (this further sacrifice is the idea of the combination) 14 ... ♗g6 15 ♘h4 ♗f5 16 ♕e2 ♗f6 17 ♕g2+ ♗g5 18 ♘d2 ♕d6 19 ♘f3 ♘d7 20 ♘xg5 hg 21 ♕xg5+ ♘f7 22 ♖e1 ♘f6 23 ♕f4 ♕xf6+ with advantage to White.

Instead of 10 ... d5! (after 10 0-0 d6 7 c3 ♘e7 8 g3) Black has two undoubtedly weaker possibilities in:

a) 8 ... ♘g6?! This comparatively new move was tried out in Dashevsky-Selivanovsky, Moscow 1961, which continued 9 gf g4 (In Fischer-Mott-Smith, Chicago 1964, White lost an important tempo and got the worst position after 9 ♕b3? 0-0 10 gf g4 11 ♔h1 ♘c6 12 ♕c2 ♘ce7 13 ♘bd2 ♗e6) 9 ... gf 10 ♔h1 ♘c6 11 ♘g1 ♕e7 12 ♕f3 ♗d7 13 ♗xf4 ♘xf4 14 ♕xf4 0-0-0 15 ♘d2 ♖df8 and now, as Keres points out, 16 ♘gf3 would have led to an advantage for White (16 ♖ae1 was played). Black does not have time for 16 ... f5 because of 17 ♘h4.

b) 8 ... g4? 9 ♘h4 f3 and now:

b1) 10 ♗xf3?! gf:

b11) 11 ♕xf3 0-0 12 ♗xf7+ ♔h8 (After 12 ... ♔h7? 13 ♕h5 ♕d7 14 ♖xh6! ♕h3 15 ♗xg7+ ♕xh5 16 ♗xh5 ♕xg7 17 ♖xf8 ♗xf8 18 ♘d2

White has a minimal endgame advantage) 13 Wh5 Ng8 14 Bxg8 Rxf1+ 15 Kxf1 Wf6+ 16 Kg2 Kxg8 17 Be3 White has insufficient compensation for the sacrificed piece.

b12) White does better perhaps to force a draw with a second piece sacrifice: 11 Bxf7+! Kxf7 12 Wxf3+ Kg8 13 W7+ Kh7 14 Rf6 Nf5, Issakov-Novotelnov, Leningrad 1947.

Better for White than 10 Nxf3?! are:

b2) 10 Be3 Nbc6 11 Nd2 0-0 12 h3 h5 13 hg hg 14 Ndxf3 gf 15 Wxf3 Be6 16 Nxe6 fe 17 Wg4! with a very strong attack, Szekely-Freymann, Abbazia 1912.

b3) 10 Na3 0-0 11 Be3 Nbc6 12 h3 Na5 13 Wd2 Nxc4 14 Nxc4 h5 15 Bh6 Ng6 16 Nf5 Bxf5 17 ef Chigorin-Schmidt, Berlin 1881.

B

3   ...   f5

Not good enough to give Black equality.

4   e5!

Only with this move can White count on obtaining an advantage.

Weaker is 4 ef d5 5 d4 Bd6 6 Bd3 Wf6 7 0-0 Nc6 8 Nc3 Nge7 9 Nb5 Bxf5 10 Nxd6+ Wxd6 11 Ne5 Bxd3 12 Wxd3 g5 13 Nxc6 bc 14 Bd2 0-0 with a clear advantage to Black, Egorov-Buyakin, Moscow 1960.

4   ...   d5

a) White gets a strong attack after

Column 2 of page 80:

4 ... g5? 5 d4! g4 6 Bxf4 gf 7 Wxf3 Wh4+ 8 g3 Wg4 9 We3 Nc6 10 Be2 Ng6 11 Nc3 Bb4 12 d5 Nd8 13 0-0-0 Schlechter-Teichmann, Vienna 1903.

b) On 4 ... d6 possible is 5 We2! de 6 Nxe5 Wc7 7 d4 g5 8 Wh5+ Kd8 9 Wxg5! (Alapin).

5   d4!

This is even stronger than 5 h4 Be7 6 d4 Nh6 7 Bxf4 Ng4 8 Wg3 0-0 9 Wd2 c6 Gunsberg-Swiderski, Vienna 1903, when White could have obtained the advantage with 10 0-0-0.

5   ...   g5
6   h4   g4
7   Ng1   f3 (53)

Of course not 7 ... fe 7 8 Bxf4 Bxh4+ 9 g3 with an overwhelming position for White.

8   Bg5!
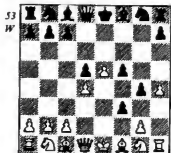
If 8 gf then 8 ... Be7 is unpleasant.

8   ...   fg
9   Bxg2   Be7
10   Ne3   Be6

Black has an unhappy position after 10 ... Bxg5 11 hg Wxg5 12

Column 1 of page 81:

Nxd5 Na6 13 Ne2 c6 14 Ndf4 h5 15 d5!.

11   Nge2   Wd7

11 ... h6 fails to 12 Nf4! hg 13 Nxe6 Wd7 14 Nxd5.

12   Nf4   c6
13   Bf1

White has a large positional advantage.

C

3   ...   Ne7

Not a very popular continuation, its basic aim is to avoid the well studied theoretical variations.

C1 3 ... Bc4
C2 3 ... Nc3
C3 4 d4

C1

4   Bc4   d5
5   ed   Nxd5

Weaker is 5 ... Ng6 6 0-0 Be7 7 d4 Nd7 8 Nd3! 0-0 9 c4 with advantage to White, Azrilyan-Faibisovich, USSR student teams, Kiev 1970.

6   0-0   Be7
7   d4   Be6

Better than 7 ... c6? as was played in Spassky-Averbakh, 22nd USSR Ch, Moscow 1955. *Editor's note:* The game continued 8 Nc3 0-0 9 Ne5 Be6 10 Bxf4 f6 11 Bxd5 cd 12 Nd3 Bf7 (12 ... Nc6-Suetin) 13 Wg4! Nh8 14 Bxh8! Rxh8 15 Rae1 We8? (15 ... Nd6-Suetin) 16 Ne5 Rf8? (16 ... Bg8 17 Ng6+ hg 18 Re3 Rh7 19 Rh3 f5! 20 Wxg6 Nh4 21 Wh5 g5 22 g3

Column 2 of page 81:

Re3! with a sharp, unclear position – Suetin) 17 Nxf7+ Rxf7 18 Wxe6 Kg8 19 Nxd5 Bf8 20 Re4 Nd6 (20 ... Wxf2 21 Rxf6!) 21 c4 b6 22 b4 Wf8 23 c5 bc 24 bc Bxc5 25 dc Wxc5+ 26 Kh1 Rd8 27 Nxe7+ Nf8 28 Nc6 Wb5 29 Rfe1 1-0.

8   Bxd5   Bxd5
9   Bxf4

with a level game.

C2

4   Nc3   Ng6

4 ... d5 5 d4 transposes to C3.

5   Bc4   Be7
6   d4   c6
7   h4   h5

a) If 7 ... Nxh4 then 8 Nxh4 Bxh4+ 9 Wf1 and 10 Wf3 is most unpleasant.

b) If 7 ... Bxh4+, then 8 Nxh4 Nxh4 9 Wh5 with active play for the sacrificed pawn.

8   Bd3   d6
9   Nh2   Bxh4

We have been following Spassky-Tolush, Kislovodsk 1960, which continued: 10 Bxf4 Bxf4 11 Rxf4 Rf6 12 e5 de 13 We2 Be6 14 de Rg6 15 Re4 Nd6 16 Nxe6 fe 17 Rd4 Wb6 18 Nf3 Be7 19 Wc4 Rh6 20 Ne4 0-0-0 (stronger was 20 ... Bc5) 21 Rad1 g5 22 Nh1 g4 23 Nfg5 Nxe5 24 Rxd8+ Rxd8 25 Nd6+ with advantage to White. *Editor's note:* Spassky only drew after 25 ... Nb8 26 We4 Wxb2 27 Wg7 Rxf7 28 Nxf7 Nc7 29 Nxh6 Wf6 30 Nf5 Wxf5 31 Wxf5 ef 32 Rd7 f4 33 Kg1 Rb6+ 34 Kf1 f3 35

gf gf 36 ♖f7 f2 37 ♖f8+ ♔c7 38
♖f7+ ♔d6 39 ♖xb7 ♔d5 40 ♖h7
♔c6 41 ♖h6 c5 ½-½.

C3

    4   d4   d5

4 ... ♘g6? is bad: 5 h4 ♗e7 6 h5
♘h4 7 ♗xf4 d5 8 ♘xh4 ♗xh4+ 9
g3.

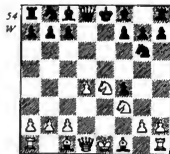   5   ♘c3

Also possible is 5 e5 ♘g6 6 ♗d3
♘h4 7 0-0 ♘xf3+ 8 ♕xf3 g5 9 g3
(Levenfish).

    5   ...   de
    6   ♘xe4   ♘g6 (54)
    7   h4!

7 ♗c4 led to a sharp struggle
with chances for both sides in
Spassky-Novopashin, 30th USSR
Ch, Erevan 1962: 7 ... ♗e7 8 h4
♘xh4 9 ♘e5 ♘c6 10 ♗xf7+ ♔f8
11 ♘xc6 bc 12 ♗b3 ♗f5 13 0-0 f3

54
W

14 gf ♕e8 15 ♔f2 h6. *Editor's note:*
The rest of the game was 16 ♗c3
♖d8 17 ♕e2 ♗g6 18 c3 ♖f7 19
♗f4 ♗d6 20 ♘xd6 ♕xe2+ 21
♔xe2 cd ½-½.

    7   ...   ♗e7
    8   h5   ♘h4
    9   ♗xf4   ♗g4
    10   h6!

with a big advantage for White
in Kuznetsov-Bonch-Osmolovsky,
Burevestnik Ch, Moscow 1964.

13 Other Third Moves for White

    1   e4   e5
    2   f4   ef

Here White can try:
A 3 ♘c3
B 3 ♗c4 The Bishop's Gambit
C 3 ♗e2

A

    3   ♘c3

A risky move (first played in
Mason-Rosenthal, Paris 1878 – *ed.*)
leading to great complications in
which a single inaccurate move by
either side can have fatal con-
sequences.

A1 3 ... ♘c6
A2 3 ... ♕h4+

A1

    3   ...   ♘c6

This move, played in Kavalek-
Stein, Tel Aviv Ol 1964, is an
interesting alternative to 3 ...
♕h4+ and can be recommended.

A11 4 d4
A12 4 ♘f3?!

A11

    4   d4   ♕h4+

This is the continuation of
Kavalek-Stein.

    5   ♔e2   d6

If 5 ... d5? Black has to reckon
with 6 ed.

    6   ♘f3   ♗g4

If White now plays 7 ♗xf4,
Black should reply not 7 ... ♗xf3+
8 ♔xf3 ♕f6 9 ♘d5! (9 ... ♘xd4+?
10 ♔e3) but 7 ... 0-0-0. A game
Barle-Portisch, 1975, continued
8 ♔e3 ♕h5 9 ♗c2 g5! 10 ♘xg5
♘f6 11 h3 ♗xe2 12 ♕xe2 ♕g6 13
d5 ♘e5 14 ♘f3 ♗h6! with the
better prospects for Black.

Kavalek in fact played 7 ♘d5
when play continued 7 ... 0-0-0 8
♔d3 ♕h6 9 ♗xf4 ♕h5 10 c4 f5
11 ef ♕xf5+ 12 ♔d2 ♘b4 13
♘xb4 ♕xf4+ with the better
game for Black.

A12

4 ♘f3?!

This transposition to the King's Knight's Gambit does not seem to be good. The inclusion of the moves 3 ♘c3 ♘c6 means that White cannot choose the Kieseritzky Gambit, whilst the variations of the Allgaier and MacDonnell Gambits are, despite the fact that Black cannot transpose to the best line for himself, unacceptable for White if Black defends accurately.

For example:

4 ... g5
5 d4

Or 5 h4 g4 6 ♘g5 h6 7 ♘xf7 ♔xf7 8 ♗c4+ d5! 9 ♗xd5 (for 9 ♗xd5+ see variation B3, Chapter 2) 9 ... ♗e6 10 d4 f3! 11 gf ♘f6 etc.

5 ... g4

On 5 ... ♗g7 6 d5 ♘e5 7 d6! is unpleasant for Black (Keres).

6 ♗c4 gf
7 ♕xf3

In this position, despite the fact that Black does not have at his disposal the move 7 ... d6 (see Malkhin's analysis in Chapter 6, variation B2) because of 8 ♗xf4 when the threat of 9 ♗xf7+ is difficult to meet (the immediate 8 ♗xf7+ is also very strong), Black can get te better position by 7 ... d5!

After 7 ... d5!, 8 ♘xd5 Black has the excellent 8 ... ♘xd4! whilst if 8 ♗xd5, 8 ... ♕h4+ and 9 ... ♕g4 is unpleasant for White.

Chigorin-Solovtsov, 1876, ended

in catastrophe for Black after 7 ... ♘xd4 8 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 9 ♕h5+ ♔g7 10 0-0 ♘e6 11 ♗xf4 ♘xf4 12 ♖xf4 ♘h6 13 ♖af1 ♗c7 14 ♕e5+ ♔g6 15 ♘d5 ♗g5 16 ♖f6+ 1-0.

A brave attempt was made to resuscitate this line of the King's Gambit/Vienna by Glaskov and Estrin in an article in *Schachmatny Bulletin* No. 1, 1982. Their lines are not wholly convincing however. Instead of 7 ♕xf3 they consider 7 0-0 d5 8 ed ♗g4 9 ♕d2 ♗g7 10 ♕f4 ♗d4+ 11 ♔h1 ♕h4 12 dc fg+ 13 ♔xg2 0-0-0 recommending in this position 14 ♘d5?. Eger-Weinitschke, East Germany corres 1983, showed a refutation: 14 ... ♖xd5! 15 ♗xd5 ♘f6 16 cb+ ♔b8 17 ♗xf7 ♕h3+ 18 ♔h1 ♗e5! 19 ♕f2 ♗f3+ 20 ♗g1 ♕g4+ 0-1.

A2

3 ... ♕h4+
4 ♔e2 d5

The sharpest method of trying to reveal the shortcomings of White's third move.

After 4 ... d6 5 ♘f3 ♗g4 6 ♘d5 (6 d4 transposes to Barle-Portisch, variation A1) 6 ... ♗xf3+ (6 ... ♕d8 looks far more sensible) 7 gf ♔d8 (7 ... ♕d8!?) White gets the advantage with:

a) **8 d3!** not closing the long black diagonal as 8 d4 does. Keres-Kunerth, corres 1936, continued 8 ... g5 9 ♗d2 ♗g7 10 ♗e1 ♕h5 11 h4 and White had the advantage.

b) Yukhtman-Polyak, Kiev 1958,

went 8 d4 g5 9 c3 c6 10 ♕b3 ♔c8 11 ♘b4 ♘h6 12 ♘d3 ♘d7 13 ♗d2 ♗c7 14 ♖c1 ♗c7 15 de! ♖he8 16 ♗g2 f3 17 ef ♗xf5 and both White bishops are condemned to a pitiful existence.

5 ♗xd5 ♗g4+
6 ♘f3 (55)
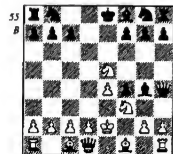
A21 6 ... ♘c6
A22 6 ... ♗d6

Editor's note: The original Mason-Rosenthal game, Paris 1878, went 6 ... ♘a6 7 d4 (better 7 ♗xf4) 7 ... ♘f6 8 ♘xf6+ ♕xf6 9 c3 0-0-0 10 ♕f2 ♗c5 with the better game for Black: 11 ♕c2 ♗xf3 12 gf ♘e6 13 ♗h3 ♔b8 14 ♗xe6 fe 15 b4 c5 16 d5 h5 17 ♗d2 g5 18 ♖ag1 g4 19 ♕d3 ♖g8 20 ♗e1 c6 21 c4? cd 22 cd ♗xb4 23 ♗xb4 ♕b6+ 24 c5 ♕xb4 25 ♖c1 ♖xd5 26 ♕c3 ♗d2+ 27 ♔e1 ♕xc3 28 ♖xc3 ♖xa2 0-1.

A21

6 ... ♘c6
7 ♗xc7+

a) Weaker is 7 d4 and now:
a1) the immediate 7 ... f5?! leads to unclear complications: 8 ♘xc7+

♔d7 9 ♘xa8 fe 10 c3 ♗h6 11 ♗xf4 gf+ 12 gf ♗xf3− 13 ♔xf3 ♕g4+ 14 ♔e3 ♗f5+ 15 ♔d2 ♕g4+ ½-½, Strogovich-Solonkovich, Leningrad 1960;

a2) 7 ... 0-0-0 8 c3 f5!? 9 ♕d3 ♘f6 10 ♗xf6 gf 11 ♗xf4 fe 12 ♕xe4 ♗h6 with a won position for Black, Keres-Kunerth, corres 1936.

b) 7 c3 however, as Glaskov points out, is possible: 7 ... 0-0-0 (if 7 ... ♘e5 8 d4!) 8 ♕e1 ♕xe1+ 9 ♔xe1 ♖e8 10 d4! ♖xe4+ 11 ♔f2 with a level game.

7 ... ♔d8!

As will become clear later, 7 ... ♔d7 is bad.

8 ♘xa8 ♘e5

This used to be considered the strongest. However, after Jago-J.E.Littlewood, English Counties Corres Ch 1964-5, another interesting continuation became well-known: 8 ... ♘d4!? 9 ♘d3 ♕f6! 10 c3 ♕a6+ 11 c4 ♗c5 12 b4! ♘f6 13 bc ♘xe4 14 ♕e1 ♖e8 15 ♕xc4 ♗xd4 16 ♗g5 ♘xc5+ 17 ♔xd4 ♕f6− 18 ♗xc5 ♕e7+ 19 ♔d4 ♕e5+ 20 ♔d3 ♗f5+ 21 ♘e4+ ♔c8 22 ♔c2 ♕xe4 with a strong attack) 15 ... ♖xe4 16 ♔xe4 ♘xf3 17 gf? (17 ♕b6! – J.E.Littlewood – would have led to an unclear position) 17 ... ♕c6+ and Black won.

9 h3

Bronstein's idea. It is essential that the g4 square should be taken away from Black.

9   ...   ♗xf3+

The position after 9 ... ♘h5 10 d4! ♘xf3 11 gf ♗xf3 12 ♔xf3 ♕h5+ 13 ♔g2 ♕xd1 (if Black's king was on d7, 14 ♗b5+ would now win) 14 ♗d3 ♕h5 15 ♗xf4 requires practical testing.

Editor's note: the game Jago-A.R.B.Thomas, English Counties Corres Ch 1953-4, continued 15 ... ♘e7 16 ♖hf1 f5 17 ♖ae1 fe 18 ♗c7+ ♔d7 19 ♖xe4 ♕d5 20 ♔g3 g6 21 ♘c7 ♕xa2 22 d5! a6 23 ♖f7 ♖g8 24 b3 ♖g7 25 ♖exe7+! ♗xe7 26 ♖xg7 ♕a5 27 d6 1-0.

10   gf   ♕g3
11   d3!?

Inviting Black to play for a win. After 11 d4 Black is forced to take the draw by 11 ... ♕xf3+ 12 ♔e1 (12 ♔d2 ♕e3+) 12 ... ♕g3+ 13 ♔e2 ♕f3+, since 13 ... f3+? loses to 14 ♔d2 ♗b4+ 15 c3 ♕f2+ 16 ♗e2 fe 17 ♕xe2 ♕xd4+ 18 ♔c2.

11   ...   ♕xf3+
12   ♔e1   ♕xh1
13   ♗xf4   ♘f6

And now instead of 14 ♖xf6 as played in Kuindzhi-Gusev, Moscow 1970, 14 ♔e2! ♗c5 15 c3 ♘f6 16 ♕a4, as pointed out by Kuindzhi, would have led to a game with chances for both sides.

A22

6   ...   ♗d6!

It is more difficult for White to find counterchances in this variation than in the first as he makes no material gains.

7   d4 (56)
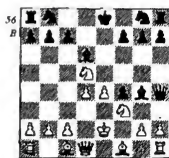
7   ...   ♘c6

This is the old line. Examples from modern practice deserving attention are:

a) 7 ... ♘e7! 8 ♘xe7 ♕xe7 9 e5 f6 10 ♗xf4 fe 11 de ♘c6 12 ♗f2 ♗xe5 13 ♗xe5 ♕xe5 14 ♕d5 ♗xf3 15 gf ♖d8 16 ♕e4 0-0 17 ♖e1 ♖xf3+! and Black wins, Ashikhin-V.Zhuravlev, Yurmala 1964.

b) 7 ... ♘f6!? 8 ♘xf6+ gf 9 c3 (9 ♔d3 ♕h5 10 ♗e2 ♘c6 with advantage to Black, Planinc-Djurović, Yugoslavia 1965) 9 ... ♗xf3 10 gf e5 11 dc ♗xc5 12 ♕e1 ♕g5 13 ♕d2 ♕h4 (Bronstein-Alatortsev, USSR Ch 1945) 14 ♕e1 with an equal game.

8   e5   0-0-0
9   ♗xf4

After 9 ed? ♖xd6 10 c4 ♘f6 it is doubtful whether Black's attack can be met.

9   ...   ♘ge7
10   c4

Spassky-Furman, 27th USSR Ch, Tallinn semi-final 1959. In this position, in Furman's opinion, Black stands better after 10 ... ♗b4!

Editor's note: Instead Furman played 10 ... ♘f5? and lost after 11 ed ♘fxd4+ 12 ♔d3! ♕h5 13 ♗e2 ♘e6 14 ♗g3 cd 15 b4 ♖he8 16 ♖e1 ♘c7 17 ♘c3 ♕h6 18 ♕c1 ♘xd5+ 19 cd ♖e3+ 20 ♗d3 ♕f6 21 ♔c2 ♖xe1 22 ♗xe1 ♗xf3 23 dc ♗xc6 24 ♘c3 ♕f2+ 25 ♕d2 ♕a4+ 26 ♔b2 ♕h4 27 ♕xg7 ♗b8 28 g3 ♕g4 29 ♖f6 ♖c8 30 ♖c1 ♖c8 31 b5 1-0 (time, but the position is lost anyway).

B

3   ♗c4

By developing his bishop instead of his knight White tempts Black to check with his queen on h4. Then, at the cost of no longer being able to castle, White hopes to entice Black into a bad position.

Whilst in days gone by this check was extremely popular, in modern times the strongest retort to the Bishop's Gambit is regarded as being the Jaenisch/Bogoljubow system, where Black strives to seize the initiative by means of a central breakthrough. It is because this particular system offers Black comfortable lines of development, that the Bishop's Gambit is met far more rarely in contemporary tournament practice than the King's Knight's Gambit.

Replies tried by Black are:

B1   3 ... f5
B2   3 ... d5
B3   3 ... ♘e7
B4   3 ... ♕h4+
B5   3 ... ♘f6

B1

3   ...   f5
4   ♕e2!

Freeing d1 for the king. Weaker are:

a) 4 ♘c3 ♕h4+ 5 ♔f1 fe 6 ♘xe4 ♗e7 7 d4 ♘h6 8 ♘f3 ♕h5 9 ♗xf4 d5 10 ♘g3 ♕f7 11 ♗b5+ c6 12 ♗xh6 cb 13 ♗e3 0-0 14 ♗g1 ♗g4! Maroczy-Marco, Vienna 1903.

b) 4 ef ♕h4+ 5 ♔f1 f3 6 d4 fg+ 7 ♔xg2 ♘f6 8 ♕e2+ ♔d8 9 ♗e3 ♘c6 10 c3 d5 11 ♗d3 ♘d6 12 ♕d2 ♖e8 13 ♘f1 ♗f4 14 ♘f3 ♕g4+ Black's position is better (analysis by S.A.Sörensen in *Nordischen Schachzeitung* 1873).

4   ...   ♕h4+

4 ... fe 5 ♕h5+ g6 6 ♕e5+ ♘e7 7 ♕xh8 ♘f6 was played in Pillsbury-Marshall, Vienna 1903, and now, following Neumann's analysis, White could have obtained an advantage by 8 ♗b3! d5 9 ♗a3 c5 10 ♗xc5 ♕xc5 11 ♕xf6 dc 12 ♕xf4.

5   ♔d1   fe
6   ♕xe4+   ♗e7
7   ♘f3

Or 7 d4 ♘f6 8 ♕xf4 ♕xf4 with a level position.

7   ...   ♕h5
8   ♖e1   ♘c6

9 b4 ♘f6 10 ♕e2 d6 11 ♗b2 a6. The position is equal (analysis by

W.C.Spencer of Chicago, *Chess Journal* 1873). According to Keres, Glaskov's move 9 ♗xg8 ♖xg8 10 ♘c3 d6 11 ♕d5 ♗f5 12 ♕c4 ♗xc2?! 13 ♗e2 is less than convincing if Black plays 12 ... ♗g4 instead.

B2

3 ... d5

Editor's note: This move made its first appearance in Bilguer-Bledow, 1841.

4 ♗xd5

Bronstein has experimented with 4 ed. Against Tseshkovsky, USSR 1978, the game continued 4 ... ♘f6 5 ♘c3 c6 6 d4 cd 7 ♗b5+ ♘c6 8 ♗xf4 ♗d6 9 ♘ge2 0-0 10 0-0 ♗xf4 (10 ... ♗g4 11 ♗g5 ♗e7 12 ♘a4 ♖c8 13 ♔h1 ♖c4 8, Bronstein-Nogueiras, Yurmala 1978, was equal) 11 ♖xf4 ♗g4 12 ♕d2 ♗xe2?! 13 ♗xe2 ♕b6 14 ♖d1 with a slight advantage to White.

4 ... ♘f6
5 ♘c3 ♗b4

Worse is 5 ... ♘xd5 6 ♗xd5 g5 7 ♕f3 ♗g7 8 h4 c6 9 ♘c3 h6 10 hg hg 11 ♖xh8+ ♗xh8 12 ♕h5 ♗f6 13 ♕f3 g4 14 ♘e5 ♕e7 15 ♗xf4 ef 16 ♔f1 ♗g3 17 ♗e2 with a big advantage to White, Dementiev-Lapitsky, USSR 1959.

6 ♕f3

White has even less chance of obtaining an advantage after:

a) 6 ♘ge2 ♗xc3 7 bc ♘xd5 8 ed ♕h4+ 9 ♔f1 ♗g4 10 ♕e1 ♕xe1+ 11 ♔xe1 f3 with an equal game

(Cordel); or

b) 6 ♕f3 0-0 7 ♘ge2 ♖e8 8 0-0 ♗g4 9 ♕xf4 ♗xc2 10 ♕xe2 ♘xd5 11 ed ♖xe2 12 ♕xb4 ♕g5 with the better game for Black, Flamberg-Spielmann, Abbazia 1912.

6 ... ♗xc3!

It is better to make this exchange at once. After 6 ... 0-0 7 0-0 ♗xc3 8 dc c6 9 ♗c4 ♕xd1 10 ♖xd1 ♘xe4 11 ♗xf4 White had the advantage in Blackburne-Pillsbury, Hastings 1895.

7 dc c6
8 ♗c4 ♕xd1+ 9 ♔xd1 0-0 10 ♗xf4 ♘xe4 11 ♖c1 the game is level (Bilguer).

B3

3 ... ♘e7

Editor's note: This was introduced by Steinitz in 1898.

4 ♘c3 c6

a) 5 ♕e2 is the move preferred by the old manuals, reference being made to two games, Halprin-Steinitz and Janowski-Steinitz, both Vienna 1898. The first went 5 ... ♘g6 6 h4 h5 7 ♘f3 ♗e7 8 d4 d6 9 g3! ♗g4 10 ♗xf4 ♘xf4 11 gf ♗xh4+ 12 ♔xh4 ♗xf3 13 ♕h2. The second deviated with 6 ♘f3 b5 7 ♗b3 b4 8 ♘d1 ♗a6 9 d3 ♗c5 10 h4. In both cases White's advantage cannot be doubted.

However, Steinitz's play can be improved upon. In the first game, after 6 h4, Black should not, of course, take this pawn because of

6 ... ♘xh4 7 ♕h5 ♘g6 8 ♘f3 ♗e7 9 ♗xf7+!; but 6 ... h5 looks rather dubious. The continuation 6 ... d6! 7 h5 ♘e5 8 d4 ♗g4 9 ♘f3 ♘xc4 10 ♕xc4 h6 11 ♗xf4 ♘d7 12 0-0-0 ♗e7 would lead to a sharp position in which Black's chances are not worse. In the second game, obviously weak is 6 ... b5? which should be replaced by 6 ... d6 7 d4 ♗g4! with a satisfactory position for Black.

b) Probably because of these possibilities, Fischer, in his game against Minić, Vinkovci 1969, chose 5 ♘f3 d5 6 ♗b3! de 7 ♘xe4 ♕d5 and now White could have obtained the advantage with 8 c4! ♘f6 9 ♘g5! ♘f6 10-0 ♗e7 11 d4 ♗d7 12 ♕e2! g5 13 ♗xg5! ♕xg5 14 ♗xf4 with a won position for White. A variation pointed out by Fischer.

Editor's note: Instead Fischer played 8 ♕e2 and won after 8 ... ♗e7 9 c4 ♘c7 10 d4 0-0 11 ♗xf4 ♘e6 12 ♗e3 ♗b4+ 13 ♗f2 ♘d7 14 c5!? ♘f6 15 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 16 ♖hf1 ♘f4 17 ♗xf4 ♕xf4 18 g3 ♕h6 19 ♔g1 ♗h3 (19 ... ♗e6!? – Hartston) 20 ♘e5! ♗xf1 21 ♕xf1 ♗d2 22 ♖f3 ♖ad8 23 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 24 ♕e7! 1-0.

5 ... ♘g6
6 d4 ♗b4
7 ♘ge2 0-0 8 0-0 ♕f6 9 e5 ♕e7 10 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 11 ♘xf4 d5 12 ed ♗xd6 13 ♖ef4 ♕e6 14 ♘e4 ♕e7 15 ♖xe6 ♕xe6 16 ♘f4 ♕e7 17 c3 ♗d6 White stands better, Planinc-

Matanović, Ljubljana 1969.

Editor's note: Planinc won neatly: 18 ♖ac1 ♗d8 19 ♕h3 ♗e7 20 ♕h5 ♘d7 21 ♕g4 g6 22 ♕xd7! gh 23 ♕h3 h4 24 ♖f5 ♗h8 25 ♖ef1 ♕d7 26 ♕d3 ♕e6 27 ♖c5 ♕d7 28 ♖xe7 (28 ... ♕xe7 29 ♘f6) 1-0.

B4

3 ... ♕h4+
4 ♔f1

Now Black has:

B41 4 ... c6
B42 4 ... ♘f6
B43 4 ... ♘c6
B44 4 ... d5
B45 4 ... d6
B46 4 ... g5
B47 4 ... f5

B41

4 ... c6
5 d4 g5
6 ♕f3 ♗f6 7 g3 ♕h5 8 e5 d5 9 ♕xh5 ♘xh5 10 ♗e2 with advantage to White, Zakharchenko-Usachi, Kiev 1970.

B42

4 ... ♘f6

This was first mentioned by Jaenisch in 1843 – *ed.*

5 ♘f3 ♕h5
6 ♕e1!

Weaker is 6 d4 when Black can play either 6 ... d5 7 ed ♗d6 or 6 ... ♘xe4!?! 7 ♕e2 d5 8 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 9 ♘c3.

6 ... d6
7 e5 de

8 Nxe5 Ne6 9 Nxf7 Wxf7 10 Nxe6
We7 11 Bc8 with a big advantage
to White (Bilguer).

B43

    4   ...   Nc6

Editor's note: This was first
recommended by Samuel Boden
in 1851.

    5 d4   g5
    6 Nc3   Nge7

Or 6 ... Bg7 7 Nf3 Nh5 8 Nd5
Kd8 9 h4 Nxd4 10 Nf2 Nxf3 11 hg
with advantage to White, Chigorin-
Schmidt, St Petersburg 1879.

    7 g3   fg
    8 Bg2   Nf6

9 hg Wg4 10 Wxg4 Bxg4 11 ed
Nxd4 12 Bxg5 with advantage to
White (Keres).

B44

    4   ...   d5
    5 Bxd5

5 ... Nf6 leads to a position
where White's chances are better
after 6 Nc3 Bb4 7 Nb3 Nc6 8 Nf3
Wh5 9 e5 Nxc3 10 bc (10 dc!? is
worthy of attention) 10 ... Ne4 11
d4 Ng3+ 12 Wg1 Nxh1 13 Nxf4
Spielmann-Jacobsen, Copenhagen
1923.

    6 g3!

The strongest move, found by
Chigorin (Bilguer, 1916, attributes
the move to Gifford – *ed.*). Now:
a) Maroczy-Pillsbury, Vienna 1903,
went 6 Nf3 Wh5 7 h4 Bg7 8 d4
Ne7 9 Nc3 h6 10 Wd3 Nbc6 11
Ne2 (11 Nb5? 0-0 12 c3 Nxd5 13

ed Ne7 14 Nxc7 Nf5 favours
Black) 11 ... Nxd5 12 ed Ne7 13
Bg1 g4 14 Nxf4 Wf5 15 Ne5
Wxd3 and now, as Keres points
out, after 16 cd 0-0 17 Be3 the
position offers equal chances.
b) 6 Wf3 Nf6 7 Wc3? (7 g3!
transposes into the main variation)
Duras-E.Cohn, Abbazia 1912, is
dubious because of 7 ... Wxd7.

    6   ...   Wh6

Bad is 6 ... fg 7 Wf3! g2+ 8 Wxg2
Nh6 9 Wg3 Bd6 10 Wxh4 gh 11 d4
Ng8+ 12 Bf1 Wg6 13 e5 Be7 14
Be4 with slightly the better game
for White, Chigorin-Maroczy,
Vienna 1903.

    7 d4   Nf6
    8 Wf3   Nxd5

9 ed Bd6 10 c4 b6 11 h4 with the
better game for White, Duras-
Spielmann, Abbazia 1912. In this
last line 8 ... Ng4! and then taking
on d5 seems to merit serious
consideration.

B45

    4   ...   d6

This line was first mentioned by
Cozio in 1766 – *ed.*

    5 Nc3   Be6
    6 We2   c6
    7 Nf3   We7

7 ... Wh5? would be answered
by 8 Nd5!

    8 d4   Bxc4
    9 Wxc4   g5
    10 e5

So far Fischer-Evans, US Ch, New
York 1963-4. Now Black could

have equalised with 10 ... de 11 de
Nd7 12 Ne4 Nxc5 13 Nxe5 Wxe5
14 Bd2 Wd5 (Fischer). *Editor's
note:* The game actually went 10 ...
d5 11 Wd3 Na6 12 Nc2 Nb4 13
Wd1 0-0-0 14 c3 Na6 15 h4 g4 16
Nh2 h5 17 Nxf4 Wxh4? (better 17
... Wb8) 18 Bg1 Nh6 19 Nf1 We7
20 Nxh5 Bg8 21 Nfg3 Ng6 22
Nf4 Bg5 23 Be3 Nc7 24 Wd2 Bg8
25 Nfe2 f6 26 ef Wxf6 27 Bxh6
Bd6 28 Bf1 We6 29 Nf4 Bde8 30
Nh6 Bxf4 31 Wxf4 We7 32 Bf6
Ne6 33 We5 Bg5 34 Wxe7 Bxe7
35 Bf8+ Bxf8 36 Bxf8+ 1-0.

B46

    4   ...   g5

This dates from Lopez, 1561 – *ed.*

    5 Nc3

Even stronger than 5 Nf3
(Polerio), which also leads to an
advantage for White after 5 ...
Wh5 6 h4 Wg4 7 Wxg4 Bxg4 8 Nc3 Ne7
9 Bg1 Wg6 10 e5 d6 11 Nb5 etc.
(Levenfish and Bilguer 1880).

    5   ...   Ne7
    6 d4   Bg7
    7 g3   fg
    8 Bg2   Wh6

Or 8 ... d6 9 hg Wg4 10 Bc2 Wd7
11 Bxg5 with advantage to White,
Paulsen-Kolisch, 3rd match game,
London 1861.

    9 hg   Wg6
    10 Nf3   h6
    11 Nd5! *(57)*

This move and the main variation
following on from the combination
were found by Neumann: 11 ...
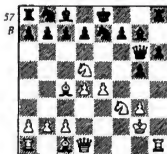
Nxd5 12 ed 0-0 13 d6! Wxd6 14
Bxg5 hg 15 Wd3 Bc8 16 Bxf7+
Kxf7 17 Nxg5+ Kc7 18 Bae1+
and White wins.

B47

    4   ...   f5

This is an attempt to transpose
to variation B1 without giving
White the chance to play We2!
freeing d1 for the king. However,
it fails to 5 e5! and now Black no
longer has ... e5 (which would be a
strong reply to 4 e5 in B1) because
the black queen is not on d8.

B5

    3   ...   Nf6!

The strongest reply. (First given
by Lopez in 1561 – *ed.*)

    4 Nc3

a) 4 e5 is answered by 4 ...
d5.
b) 4 We2 d5! 5 ed+ Be7 6 Nf3 0-0
and Black has a good position,
Gheorghiu-Portisch, Amsterdam
1970.
c) 4 d3 is harmless. Pomar-
Portisch, Nice Ol 1974, continued

4 ... d5 5 ed d6 6 ♕e2+ ♗e7 7 ♘c3 0-0 8 ♗d2 (8 ♗xf4 ♗b4!) and now by 8 ... ♗b4 9 0-0-0 ♗xc3 10 ♗xc3 ♘xd5 Black could have reached a perfectly satisfactory position.

B51 4 ... ♗b4?!
B52 4 ... c6!

Editor's note: The game Spassky-Nurmamedov, Rostov semi-final, 28th USSR Ch 1960, went 4 ... d65 d4 ♗e7 6 ♗xf4 0-0 7 ♘f3 ♘xe4 8 ♘xe4 d5 9 ♗d3 de 10 ♗xe4 ♘d7 11 c3 ♘f6 12 ♗c2 ♗d6 13 ♗xd6 cd 14 0-0 ♗g4 15 ♕d3 ♗h5 16 ♘h4 ♗g6 17 ♘xg6 fg 18 ♖ae1 ♕c7 19 ♗b3+ ♔h8 20 ♗e6 ♖ae8 21 c4 ♖e7 22 ♖e2 ♖fe8 23 ♖fe1 ♕a5 24 a3 ♘h5 25 ♕f3 ♕g5 26 ♖f1 h6 27 d5 ♘f6 28 ♕f2 ♕d7 29 h4 ♕f6 30 ♗xd7 ♕xf2+ 31 ♔xf2 ♖xe2 32 ♗xe8 ♖e1+ 33 ♖f1 ♖xe8 34 ♖f7 ♖b8 35 h4 a5 36 c5 1-0.

B51

4 ... ♗b4
5 ♘f3

Castro-Karpov, World Junior Ch, Stockholm 1969, confirmed yet again that the complications arising after 5 e5 d6 6 ♗b5+ c6 7 ef cb 8 fg ♗g9 ♕c2+ ♗e6 10 ♕xb5+ ♘c6 11 ♕xb7 ♖c8 12 ♘f3 ♖xg7 13 0-0 ♗h3 14 ♖e1+ ♔f8 15 ♖e2 ♗g4! 16 ♖f2 ♗c5 are favourable to Black. *Editor's note:* The game concluded 17 d4 ♘xd4 18 ♘xd4 ♗xd4 19 ♗xf4 ♗xf2+ 20 ♔xf2 ♖g6 21 ♗g1 d4 22 ♖f1 ♕d7 23 ♕b4+ ♔g8 24 ♗e4 ♕d5 25 ♕e7 ♕e6 26 ♕b7 ♗c2 27 ♖c1 ♖xc2 28 ♘g5 ♕f5 29 ♗e5 ♖xg5 30 h4 ♕xc5 0-1.

5 ... ♘c6

Or 5 ... c6 6 e5 d5 7 ef dc 8 fg ♖g8 9 d4! cd 10 cd ♖xg7 11 0-0 with advantage to White.

6 ♘d5! 0-0
7 0-0 ♘xe4

Slightly better is 7 ... ♘xd5 8 cd ♘e7 9 ♘g5 h6 10 ♘e4 ♘g6 11 c3 ♘xf4 12 d4 with a small advantage to White.

8 d4 ♗e7
9 ♗xf4 d6

10 ♕d3 ♘f6 11 ♘g5 g6 12 ♘xe7+ ♘xe7 13 ♘xf7! ♖xf7 14 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 15 ♗g5 ♘eg8 16 ♖xf6+ and White has a won position, Spielmann-Grünfeld, Innsbruck 1922.

B52

4 ... c6! (58)
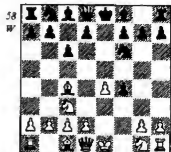
This move, suggested by Jaenisch and analysed by Bogoljubow, guarantees Black a good position. Now White has tried:

B521 5 ♕e2
B522 5 ♗b3
B523 5 ♕f3
B524 5 d4

B521

5 ♕e2 d5!
6 ed+ ♗e7
7 d4 0-0
8 ♘f3?

Of course 8 ♗xf4 is better; however, this does not change the overall assessment of the variation.

8 ... cd
9 ♗d3 ♗d6

10 0-0 ♘c6 11 ♖d1 ♗g4 Black stood better in Milev-Barcza, Bucharest 1953.

B522

5 ♗b3 d5
6 ed cd!
7 d4 ♗d6
8 ♘ge2 ♗g4
9 0-0

9 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 10 ♘xf4 ♖e8+ 11 ♘fe2 ♗g4 is good for Black. Fischer recommended in this position 12 ♘xd5 ♗e6 13 h3 ♗xd5 14 hg ♗xg2 15 ♖h2 which is fine for White, but, as Keres points out, Black can improve by 13 ... ♘h6 or perhaps even stronger, 12 ... ♘c6.

9 ... g5
10 ♘xd5 ♘c6

11 c3 ♘xd5 12 ♗xd5 ♘e7 13 ♗e4 f5 with advantage to Black, Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Mährisch Ostrau 1923.

B523

5 ♕f3 d5
6 ed ♗d6
7 d3

Even worse are:
a) 7 ♘ge2 0-0 8 ♘xf4 ♗xf4 9 ♕xf4 cd 10 ♗e2 ♖e8 11 d4 ♗g4 (Levenfish), or
b) 7 d4 0-0 8 ♗xf4 ♗g4 9 ♕g3 ♖e8+ was Winkelmann-Horowitz, Philadelphia 1936.

7 ... ♗g4
8 ♕f2 0-0
9 ♗xf4 ♖e8+
10 ♔f1 ♗xf4

Recommended by Euwe.

Not altogether clear is the old continuation 10 ... b5 11 ♗b3 b4 12 ♘ce2 ♗xd5 13 ♗xd5 cd 14 ♕g3 ♗xe2+ 15 ♘xe2 ♕f6 because of Keres' suggestion 16 ♕g5!.

11 ♗xf4 cd
12 ♘xd5 ♘xd5

13 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 14 ♕xg4 ♘c6 when Black has adequate compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

B524

5 d4 ♗b4
6 e5

Even worse is 6 ♕f3 d5 7 ed 0-0 8 ♘ge2 cd 9 ♗d3 ♗g4 10 ♕xf4 ♗xe2 11 ♗xe2 ♘c6 12 ♗e3 ♖e8 with a big advantage to Black, Spielmann-Bogoljubow, Carlsbad 1923.

6 ♗d3 d5 7 e5 ♗g4 8 ♘f3 ♘e4 9 0-0 ♘xc3 10 bc ♗xc3 11 ♖b1 ♗d4+ 12 ♔h1 ♘d7 13 ♗xf4, Lutikov-Ermenkov, Yurmala 1978,

would have been much better for Black if he had played 13 ... ♘c5!

6   ...   ♘e4!

More decisive than 6 ... d5 7 ef dc 8 fg ♖g8 9 ♘f3 ♖xg7 10 0-0 with equal chances.

7   ♘f3   d5

Rather rash would be 7 ... ♕h4+? 8 ♗f1 ♘g3+ 9 hg ♕xh1 10 ♘e4 and White wins.

8   ed   0-0
9   ♕ge2   ♕h4+!

10 g3 fg 11 hg ♕g4 12 ♕xg4 ♗xg4 13 ♗d3 ♖e8 Black's advantage is indisputable.

C

3   ♗e2

Tartakower's variation. (The move was first analysed by Jaenisch – *ed*.)

After a lengthy break this last move of White is coming back into fashion again. Although a modest-looking move it still leaves Black quite a few problems to overcome if he is not to get the inferior position.

3   ...   d5

The most energetic continuation. Other possibilities worthy of mention are:

a) 3 ... ♘e7 and now:

a1) 4 d4? d5 5 ed ♘xd5 6 ♘f3 ♗b4+ 7 c3 ♗e7 8 0-0 0-0 Black's position is better, Tartakower-Alekhine, London 1924;

a2) 4 ♘c3! d5 5 ed ♘xd5 6 ♘xd5 ♕xd5 7 ♘f3 is stronger, transposing to the main variation.

b) 3 ... h6. This move, appropriated from the King's Knight's Gambit, is out of place here. After 4 d4 g5 5 h4 ♗g7 6 g3 fg 7 hg hg 8 ♖xh8+ ♗xh8 9 ♘c3 d6 10 ♘c3 ♘c6 11 ♕d2 g4 12 0-0-0 White obtained the advantage in N.Littlewood-Zwaig, Tel Aviv Ol 1964.

On 4 ... ♘e7 White should play:

a) 5 c4: c6 6 d4 ♘g6 7 ♘c3 ♗b5 8 ♗f3 with possibilities for both sides.

b) The weaker 5 ♗f3 ♘xd5 6 ♘e2 ♗e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 c4 ♘f6 9 d4 g5 10 ♘bc3 was played in N.Littlewood-Lengyel, Hastings 1963-4, and now, as Keres points out, Black could have achieved a good position with 10 ... ♘c6.

Editor's note: Instead the game went 10 ... ♘h8 11 b4!? ♗bd7 12 ♗b2 ♖e8 13 d5 ♘e5? 14 ♘e4 ♘xe4 15 ♗xe4 ♘f6 16 ♘xf4! gf 17 ♕h5 ♘g6 18 ♖xf4! ♗xb2 19 ♖xf7 ♗d4+ 20 ♔h1 ♗g7 21 ♖xg6 hg 22 ♖xg7 ♔xg7 23 ♗xe8 ♕f6 24 ♖e1 ♗f5 25 ♖f1 ♗g6 26 ♕d1 ♕c3 27 ♗xg6 1-0.

5   ♘f3

This is stronger than 5 c4 c6 6 d4 ♗b4+ 7 ♔f1 cd 8 ♗xf4 dc 9 ♗xb8 ♕d5! with the better position for Black, Tartakower-Capablanca, New York 1924.

5   ...   ♗e7

Inferior is 5 ... ♗d6 6 c4 c6 7 d4 cd 8 c5 ♗c7 and now in Ignatiev-Freidin, Moscow 1962, White could have consolidated his ad-

vantage with 9 b4!.

6   0-0   0-0
7   ♘c3   ♘xd5
8   ♘xd5   ♕xd5
9   d4   g5 (59)

We have reached the position discussed at the end of Chapter 11 (see p.72). White has attacking chances.
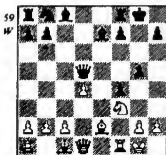
D

3   ♕f3   ♘c6!

3 ... ♕h4+ leads to an unclear position, since the analysis given by Breyer (to whom 3 ♕f3 should be attributed) showing an advantage for White is not altogether accurate: 4 g3 fg 5 hg ♕f6 6 ♘c3 ♕xf3 7 ♘xf3 ♗e7 8 ♘d5 ♗d8 9 b3 ♘f6 10 ♗b2 ♘xd5 11 ed 0-0 12 d6. In this variation after 9 ... ♘e7 10 ♗b2 0-0 it is not easy for White to demonstrate that he has adequate compensation for the pawn.

3 ... d5 however, is a satisfactory alternative for Black. After 4 ed ♘f6 5 ♗b5+ c6 6 dc ♘xc6 7 d4 ♗d7 8 ♘e2 ♕b6 9 ♕d3 ♗d6 10 c4 0-0! 11 ♗xc6 ♗xc6 he has an attractive position, Spielmann-Nimzovitch, match 1906.

4   c3

a) 4 ♘e2 d5 5 ed ♘b4 6 ♘a3 ♘f6 or

b) 4 ♕xf4 d5 5 cd ♘b4 6 ♕e4+ ♕e7 7 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 8 ♔d1 – both give Black a good position (Keres).

4   ...   ♘f6

Kupka-Blatny, Czechoslovakia 1962, developed interestingly: 4 ... ♘e5 5 ♕xf4 ♗d6 6 ♕e3 ♘g4 7 ♕h3 h5 8 d4 ♕f6 9 ♕f3 ♗xd2 10 ♗c4 ♕xf3 11 ♘xf3 ♗g3+ 12 ♔e2 ♘f2 13 ♖f1 ♘xe4 14 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 15 ♗g6 ♘g6 16 ♘e5 ♘xe5 17 ♗xd2 d6 when Black maintains his material advantage and has winning chances.

5   d4   d5
6   e5   ♘e4
7   ♗xf4

7 ♗b5, trying to provoke Black into checking with his queen, was played in Spielmann-Möller at Göteborg 1920. Play continued 7 ... ♕h4+ (simpler would be 7 ... ♗e7) 8 ♔f1 g5 9 ♘d2! ♗g4? (stronger was 9 ... ♗f5 10 ♗d3 ♘g3+ 11 hg ♗xd3+ 12 ♕xd3 ♕xh1 13 gf gf followed by 14 ... 0-0-0 – Spielmann) 10 ♕xe4 ♗xf3 11 ♘xf3 ♕h6 12 ♕f6+ ♔d8 13 h4! with complications favouring White.

7   ...   f6

Or 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♘d2 f5 9 ef ♘xf6 10 ♗d3 0-0 with the better game for Black in Drimer-Unzicker, Hastings 1969-70.

8   ♗b5   ♗e7

9   ef   ♗xf6

And now 10 ♘d2 ♘xd2 is Keres-Johansson, corres 1939; whilst Spielmann-Tarrasch, Berlin 1920,

continued 10 ♘e2 0-0 11 0-0 g5! 12 ♗xc6 bc 13 ♗e5 and now Black could have obtained a decisive advantage with 13 ... ♗a6!

14   The Falkbeer Counter Gambit

	1	e4	e5
	2	f4	d5

With this pawn sacrifice (known at least as early as 1782, the line takes its name from Ernst Karl Falkbeer, 1819-1885, who published extensive analyses in the *Deutsche Schachzeitung* of 1850 – *ed.*) Black strives to seize the initiative. He has good grounds for hoping to do so in view of his advanced central pawn hampering the development of White's pieces, the unsatisfactory position of White's pawn on f4 which blocks in its own black-squared bishop and because there are a number of weakened squares in the centre and on the king-side.

White has a choice of:

A 3 ♘f3
B 3 ed

A

3   ♘f3

This allows Black to equalise easily by means of

3   ...   de

Weaker is 3 ... ♗g4 when White can try for an advantage with 4 ♗e2 (4 c3 has also been met).

4   ♘xe5 *(60)*
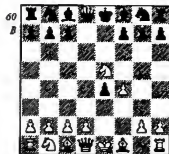
Now Black has:

A1 4 ... ♗d6
A2 4 ... ♘c6
A3 4 ... ♘d7

A1

4   ...   ♗d6
5   ♗c4!?

Alternatives are:

a) 5 ♕e2 when now:

a1) 5 ... ♕e7?? was played in Chigorin-Walbrodt, Budapest 1896,

and White generated a strong attack with 6 ♕xe4! f6 7 d4 fe 8 fe c6 9 ♘c4 ♗c7 10 0-0 ♗e6 11 ♗g5 ♕xg5 12 ♗xc6 ♘b6 13 ♗c8.

a2) Better is 5 ... ♘f6 6 d4 ed 7 ♘xd3+ ♕e7 8 ♘c3 ♗g4 9 ♕xe7+ ♔xe7 with an equal game (analysis by Chigorin).

b) 5 d4 ed is no better for White:

b1) 6 ♕xd3 ♘f6 7 ♗e2 0-0 8 0-0 ♘c6 9 ♘c3 ♘d4 10 ♗f3 ♖e8 with the better game for Black.

b2) 6 ♗xd3 ♘f6 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♘c3 ♘bd7 9 ♘xd7 ♗xd7 10 h3 ♖e8 with the better game for Black, Blackburne-Thomas, England 1912.

    5   ...   ♗xe5
    6   fe   ♘c6!

Anderssen-Schallopp, 1865, went 6 ... ♕d4 7 ♕e2 ♕xe5 8 d4! ♕xd4 9 ♘c3 ♘f6 10 ♗e3 ♕d8 11 0-0 h6 12 ♗c5 ♘bd7 13 ♕xe4+! ♘xe4 14 ♗xf7 mate.

    7   e6!

After 7 ... ♗xe6 8 ♕xe6 fe we have a sharp position with chances for both sides.

A2

    4   ...   ♘c6
    5   ♗b5   ♘f6
    6   ♕e2!

With the threat of 7 ♘xc6.

a) Also possible is 6 d4 ed 7 ♘xc6 bc 8 ♗xc6+ ♗d7 9 ♗xd7+ (on 9 ♗xa8?, 9 ... ♖xa8 is unpleasant for White) 9 ... ♕xd7 10 ♕xd3 with slightly the better chances for White.

b) The immediate 6 ♘xc6 bc 7 ♗xc6+ ♗d7 8 ♗xa8 fails to 8 ... ♗g4.

    6   ...   ♗d7
    7   ♗xe6   bc
White stands better.

A3

    5   ...   ♗d7
    5   d4

Worth attention is 5 ♘c3!? ♘xe5 6 de ♕d4 7 ♕e2 ♕xe5 8 d4 ♕xd4 9 ♗e3 ♕d8 10 ♖d1 ♗d6 11 ♘xe4 ♘e7 12 ♗g5 f6 13 ♗f4 0-0 14 ♗xd6 cd 15 ♘xd6 with a won position for White, Lutikov-Lisitsin, USSR 1955. Black should play 5 ... ♘gf6 here.

    5   ...   ed
    6   ♘xd3   ♘gf6
    7   ♘c3   ♘b6

8 ♗e2 ♗d6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗f3 c6 Lutikov-Nikitin, Tiflis 1959. The position is level.

B

    3   ed

Now Black has three main possibilities:

B1 3 ... c6
B2 3 ... ef
B3 3 ... e4

Unsatisfactory is 3 ... ♕xd5? 4 ♘c3 ♕e6 5 fe ♕xe5+ 6 ♗e2 ♗g4 7 d4 ♕e6 8 ♕d3 with a big advantage to White in Tolush-Alatortsev, Moscow 1948.

B1

    3   ...   c6

Suggested by Nimzovitch. However, it is more difficult for Black to achieve full equality in this variation than in other variations of the Falkbeer Counter-Gambit.

    4   ♘e3!

Other possibilities that have been tested are:

a) 4 ♕f3 ef 5 dc ♘xc6 6 ♗b5 ♘f6 7 d4 ♗g5? Spielmann-Nimzovitch, 1907. White would now have done best to play 8 c3.

b) 4 ♕e2 and now:

b1) 4 ... cd 5 ♕xe4+ ♗e7 6 dc ♕xd7 7 ♗g5! ♘f6 and 7 ... h4) 5 ... ♘c6 6 c3 d4 7 ♘f3 ♘gc7 8 d3 ♘g6 9 ♕e4 ♗c5 10 ♘bd2 0-0 11 ♘b3 f5! with the better game for Black, Alekhine-Jöhner, Karlsbad 1911.

b2) 4 ... e4?! 5 ♕xe4+ ♗e7 6 d6 ♕xd6 7 ♘f3 ♘f6 8 ♕e5 ♕d8 9 ♗c4 0-0 10 0-0. Black does not have sufficient compensation for the pawn, Krutikhin-Zhilin, Novosibirsk 1962.

c) 4 dc ♘xc6 5 d3 ♗c5 6 ♘c3 ♘f6 7 ♘f3 0-0 8 fe ♕xe5 9 ♗g5 (or 9 ♘xe5 ♖e8 10 ♗f4 ♗g4 11 ♕e2 ♘xe5 12 ♗xe5 ♗d4 with a won position) 9 ... ♖e8 10 ♘e2 (10 ♘e4 ♘xe4 11 ♗xd8 ♘c3+; whilst if 10 ♕xe5 ♖xe5+ 11 ♘e4 ♘xe4! 12 ♗xd8 ♗f2+ 13 ♔e2 ♗g4+) 10 ... ♘xf3— 11 gf ♕d4 was Lazard-Tartakower, Paris 1929 (analysis by Tartakower).

    4   ...   ef

a) Possible is 4 ... cd 5 fe d4 6 ♘e4 ♕d5 7 ♕e2 ♘c6 8 ♘f3 ♗g4 9 c4!

dc 10 dc 0-0-0 11 ♗f4 ♘xe5 12 ♘xe5 ♗xf3 13 ♕xf3 ♕xe5 14 ♗e2 with a slight advantage to Black, Cheremisin-Kantorovich, Moscow 1965. Hebden-Tempone, World Student Teams, Chicago 1983, varied with 7 d3 ♘c6 8 ♘f3 ♗f5 9 ♕g3 ♗g4 10 ♗e2 but White could achieve no advantage.

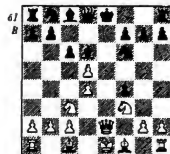b) Quite unsatisfactory is 4 ... ♗b4? 5 ♘f3 ♘c3 6 dc e4 7 ♘e5 cd 8 ♗b5+ etc.

    5   ♗f3

5 ... ♗d6!? was played in Hebden-Henley, New York 1984. After 6 d4 ♘e7 7 dc bc6 8 d5 ♘b4 9 ♗c4 Black can get the advantage by 9 ... ♗f5. White should try 7 ♗d3 in this line.

    6   d4

Recommended by Estrin.

After 6 ... ♘xd5 7 ♕xd5 ♕xd5 8 ♗xf4 ♗e4+ 9 ♕e2 ♕xe2+ 10 ♗xe2 ♗e7 11 0-0 ♗c6 12 c4 0-0 13 ♘g5 White stands better, Stoltz-Brinckmann, Swinemünde 1932.

    7   ♕e2+ (61)

The fate of this variation hangs

upon the assessment of the position shown in the diagram.

Analysis shows that White's position is preferable. Black has:

B11 7 ... ♘f8?!
B12 7 ... ♕e7

B11

7 ...   ♘f8?!
8 ♘e5   cd
9 ♗xf4!

In Cheremisin-Estrin, Moscow 1959, Black obtained the advantage after 9 ♗b5? ♗e7 10 ♗xf4 ♘c6 11 ♘c7 ♖b8 12 c3 ♗d7 (even simpler is 12 ... ♗f5!).

9 ...   ♘c6
10 0-0-0

Now on 10 ... ♗f5 there follows 11 ♕f2 or 11 ♕e3 with the better position for White; whilst 10 ... ♗xe5 11 de ♗g4 loses for Black after 12 ♕d2 ♗d1 13 ef ♗h5 14 fg+ ♔xg7 15 ♗h6+ ♔g8 16 ♕xd5 ♗g6 17 ♗c4 etc.

B12

7 ...   ♕e7
8 ♕xe7+   ♔xe7
9 ♘e5!

This is stronger than 9 ♗c4 ♗f5 10 0-0 ♗xc2 11 ♘e5 b5 12 ♗b3 ♗xb3 13 ab b4 14 ♘e2 ♘xd5 15 ♘xf4 ♗xe5 16 de ♘xf4 17 ♗xf4 ♘d7 with equal chances (Estrin).

9 ...   ♘xd5

Or 9 ... ♗f5 10 ♗xf4 ♗xc2 11 ♔d2! ♗e4 12 de ♘xc6 13 ♖e1 ♗b4 14 ♗g5 Black cannot avoid losing material.

10 ♘xd5+   cd
11 ♗xf4   f6
12 ♕d3 ♘c6 13 0-0-0 ♗xf4 14 ♘xf4 ♔d6 White has slightly the better endgame, Tetenbaum-Estrin, Moscow 1959.

B2

3 ...   ef
4 ♕f3

This move transposes into the Breyer variation (section D, Chapter 13). Although White has obtained a more satisfactory variation of the Breyer than 1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♕f3 ♘c6!, it remains true that Black faces no real problems.

4 ...   ♘f6
5 ♗b5+

White obtained a good position after 5 ♘c3 ♗g4 6 ♕xf4 ♗d6 7 ♕e3+ ♗e7 8 ♗c4 0-0 9 ♘f3 ♗xf3 10 ♕xf3 ♘c6 11 ♘e2 ♕bd7 12 c4 (Planinc-Gligorić, Pula 1968), but Black should have played 5 ... ♗d6!.

Instead, Ree-Gligorić, Teesside 1972, continued 5 ♗c4 ♗d6! 6 ♘c3 0-0 7 ♘ge2 ♗g4 8 ♕f2 ♘bd7 with advantage to Black.

5 ...   c6

Other moves met in practice are:

a) 5 ... ♗d7 6 ♘c3 ♗b4 7 ♘ge2 0-0 8 ♗xd7 ♘bxd7 9 0-0 ♗b6 10 ♗xf4 in Reti-Spielmann, Stockholm 1919, and

b) 5 ... ♘bd7 6 ♘c3 ♗d6 7 ♘ge2 0-0 8 0-0 ♗b6 9 ♕xf4.

Play is roughly equal in both

cases.

6 dc   bc
7 d4 (62)
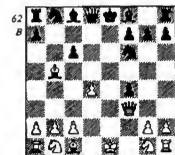
7 ...   ♗b4+

Also adequate is 7 ... ♕a5+ 8 ♘c3 ♗g4 9 ♕xc6+ ♔d8 10 ♗xa8 ♗xf3 11 ♘xf3 ♗h4 12 0-0! ♗xc3 13 bc ♕xc3 14 ♗xf4 ♘bd7 with possibilities for both sides.

8 c3   ♗g4
9 ♗xc6+   ♔f8
10 ♗xa8   ♗xf3

This position occurred in the game Kuindzhi-I.Zaitsev, Moscow 1970. Now in Kuindzhi's opinion, White could have achieved a good position after 11 ♗xf3! ♕e7+ 12 ♔d1 ♗d6 13 ♖e1 and 14 ♘bd7.

B3

3 ...   e4

White can now choose from:

B31 4 ♗b5+
B32 4 c4
B33 4 d4
B34 4 ♘c3
B35 4 d3

B31

4 ♗b5!

This move, along with 4 c4 and 4 d4, offers White no chances of obtaining an advantage.

4 ...   c6
5 dc   bc

Also possible is 5 ... ♘xc6 6 d4 ♕a5+ 7 ♘c3 ♗b4 8 ♗d2 ♘f6 9 a3 ♗xc3 10 ♗xc6+ bc 11 ♗xc3 ♕c7 12 ♘e2 ♗a6 with good play for Black, Chigorin–Znosko-Borovsky, Kiev 1903.

6 ♗c4   ♘f6
7 d4   ♘bd7!
8 ♗e2 ♘b6 9 ♗b3 ♗d6 with excellent attacking prospects.

B32

4 c4   c6
5 ♘c3   ♘f6
6 d4   cd
7 ♕b3 ♗e7 8 ed 0-0-0 9 ♘ge2 ♘bd7 10 ♗g3 ♘b6 winning the pawn back with the better position was Tartakower-Reti, Vienna 1922.

B33

4 d4   ♘f6!

Wibe-Stanciu, Havana 1966, went 4 ... ♕xd5 5 a3 c5? 6 ♘c3 ♕xd4 7 ♕xd4 cd 8 ♘xe4 f5 9 ♗g5 ♘f6 10 ♗c4 ♗f5 11 ♗d2 h6 12 ♘e6 ♗xe6 13 ♗xe6 and White obtained the advantage. However, as Boleslavsky points out, Black could have equalised by playing 5 ... ♘f6 6 ♘c3 ♕d8 7 ♗c4 ♗c7.

After 4 ... ♘f6! White has nothing better than to transpose

to the positions analysed above: e.g. 5 ♗b5+ c6, or 5 c4 c6 6 ♘c3 (dangerous here would be 6 dc ♘xc6 7 d5 because of 7 ... ♗c5!) 6 ... cd etc.

B34

4 ♘c3 ♘f6

And now:

B341 5 ♗c4
B342 5 d3
B343 5 ♕e2

B341

5 ♗c4 ♗c5
6 d4 ed
7 ♕xd4 0-0
8 ♘ge2

If the immediate 8 h3, 8 ... c6 would be adequate.

8 ... ♗g4
9 ♕f3 ♖e8

10 h3 ♘e3 11 ♗xe3 ♖xe3 12 ♕f1 ♕h4+ with sufficient initiative for the pawn, Spassky-Tumurbator, Student Ol, Leningrad 1960. *Editor's note:* Spassky outclassed his opponent: 13 ♔d2 ♖e8 14 ♔c1 ♘d7 15 ♔b1 a6 16 a4 b6 17 g3 ♕d8 18 ♕g2 ♗b7 19 ♖d1 ♕e7 20 ♘d4 ♗xd4 21 ♖xd4 ♖e5 22 ♕d2 ♖e1+ 23 ♘a2 ♖xa1+ 24 ♔xa1 b5 25 ♗b3 ba 26 ♗xa4 ♕b6 27 ♘e4 ♕f8 28 ♗b3 a5 29 ♕c3 a4 30 ♗a2 a3 31 b4 ♕f8 32 g4 h6 33 ♗b3 a2 34 ♘c5 ♗a6 35 d6 cd 36 ♖xd6 ♕c7 37 ♖g6 1-0.

B342

5 d3 ♗b4

6 ♗d2

Suspect is 6 de? ♘xe4 7 ♕d4 ♗xc3+ 8 bc 0-0 9 ♘f3 ♖e8 10 ♗e3 ♕e7 11 ♗b5 c6 12 dc ♕d6 13 bc ♘xb5 14 ba♕ ♘xc4 15 cd ♕xe3+ 16 ♔d1 ♗a6 with a won position for Black, Gossip-Schiffers, Breslau 1889.

6 ... e3

In Spassky-Bronstein, Moscow 1971, Black tried 6 ... 0-0?! when 7 ♘xc4 ♖e8 8 ♗xb4 ♘xe4 9 de ♖xe4+ 10 ♗e2 ♖xb4 11 ♘f3 ♕xf4 12 ♕d2 ♕d6 13 0-0-0 led to a slight advantage to White. *Editor's note:* The game continued 13 ... ♘d7 14 ♘d4 a6 15 g3? (15 ♘e6! fe 16 de ♕xd2+ 17 ♖xd2 ♘f8 18 e7 with advantage to White, or 16 ... ♘f6 17 ♕e3! again better for White – Kotov) 15 ... ♖f6 16 ♖he1 ♘e5 17 h5 ♘d7 18 ♕e2 ♖e8 ½-½.

7 ♗xe3 0-0
8 ♗d2

The attempt to rehabilitate this variation in Gruzman-Kimelfeld, Moscow 1966, with 8 ♗e2?!, proved unsuccessful after 8 ... ♗xc3+ 9 bc ♘xd5 10 ♗d2 ♕f6 11 ♕c1 ♖e8 12 c4 ♘c3 13 ♕b2 ♘xe2 14 ♕xf6 gf 15 ♘xe2 ♗g4 16 h3 ♖xe2+ 17 ♔d1 ♖xd2+ Black's position is preferable.

8 ... ♗xc3
9 bc ♖e8+
10 ♗e2 ♗g4

and now not 11 c4? c6 12 dc ♘xc6 13 ♔f1 ♖xe2! with a quick rout, Schulten-Morphy, New York 1857, but 11 ♔f2! ♗xe2 12 ♘xe2 ♕xd5

and, despite being a pawn down the chances are roughly equal.

B343

5 ♕e2 ♗f5 (63)
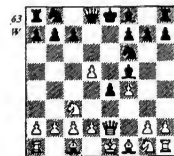
Black has several other possibilities here:

a) If 5 ... ♗d6 (or 5 ... ♗c5) White plays 6 d3! (this is stronger than 6 ♘xe4? 0-0 7 ♘c6+ ♔h8 8 ♕d2 ♗f5 9 d3 ♗b4+ as occurred in Gunsberg-Bardeleben, Hastings 1895) 6 ... 0-0 7 de ♘xe4 8 ♘xe4 ♖e8 9 ♕f3 f5 10 ♗e3 fe 11 ♕f2 and White has the advantage (Rubinstein).

b) 5 ... ♗e7! gives White the most bother:

b1) 6 d3?! the move recommended by theory, can lead to difficulties: 6 ... ed 7 ♕xd3 ♘a6 8 a3 ♘c5 9 ♕d4 0-0 10 b4 (better is 10 ♗e2) 10 ... ♖e8! with a very strong attack for Black, Khavsky-Knyshenko, USSR 1962.

b2) 6 ♘xe4 is also risky. After 6 ... 0-0 7 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 8 ♕f3 ♖e8+ 9 ♔d1 c6 10 ♗c4 b5 11 ♗b3 ♗b7 12 ♘e2 a5, Planinc-Vasyukov, Wijk

aan Zee 1973, Black had strong pressure for his material sacrifice.

b3) 6 h3!! is White's best reply: 6 ... ♘xd5 7 ♘xd5 ♕xd5 8 ♗b2 0-0 9 ♕c3 ♘d7 10 ♗c4 ♕a5 11 ♘e2 ♗f6 12 ♘c3 and White's position is preferable.

c) 5 ... ♗g4?! can hardly be good for Black. The most logical reply is 6 ♕e3! The attempt to win a piece by 6 ♕b5+? can end miserably for White: 6 ... ♘bd7 7 h3 a6 8 ♕a4 b5 9 ♕a5 ♘xd5! and Black wins, Zubova-Konstantinova, USSR 1968.
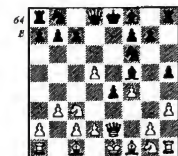
Khavsky's idea, which deserves very close attention.

Black has no difficulties after 6 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 7 d3 ♕h4!! (Rubinstein only examined 7 ... ♕xd5 8 ♗d2 ♗e7 9 de ♕xe4 10 ♕xe4 ♗xe4 11 0-0-0 with advantage to White) 8 ♕d1 (if 8 g3? then 8 ... ♕e7 9 de ♗xe4) 8 ... ♕e7 9 de ♗xe4 (Keres).

6 ... h5
7 b3! (64)

Now that Black has weakened his king-side with 6 ... h5 White

must castle queen-side as quickly as possible so as to begin active operations in the centre and on the king-side.

    7 ...   c6

Black could try to block White's king-side by 7 ... h4?! e.g. 8 ♗b2 ♘h5 9 ♘xe4 ♗e7 10 g4! hg 11 ♘f3 ♕xd5 (after 11 ... g2 12 ♗xg2 ♗h4+ 13 ♔d1 White has a big material advantage) 12 ♗g2 ♘c6.

    8 ♘f3   cd
    9 ♘d4   ♗d7
    10 ♗b2   ♘c6
    11 ♕e3

This sharp position requires practical testing.

B35

    4 d3   ♘f6

Other moves are weaker:

a) 4 ... ♕xd5 5 ♕e2 f5 (5 ... ♘f6 6 ♘c3 leads to a favourable variation for White of Bronstein-Szabo, given later – see p.108) 6 ♘c3 ♗b4 7 ♗d2 ♗xc3 8 ♗xc3 ♘f6 and now:

a1) 9 0-0-0 ♕xa2 10 de ♘xe4 11 b3 0-0 12 ♕c4+ ♔h8 13 ♗b2 White stands better (analysis by Reti).

a2) 9 de ♕xe4 10 ♕xe4+ fe 11 ♗c4 with advantage to White (Panov and Estrin).

b) 4 ... ed

b1) 5 ♕xd3 ♘f6 6 ♘c3 ♗c5 7 ♗d2 0-0 8 0-0-0 ♗d7 9 g3 ♘b6 10 ♗g2 ♗g4 11 ♘f3 ♘bxd5 12 h3 with advantage to White in Stoltz-Marshall, Folkestone Ol 1933.

b2) Also possible is 5 ♗xd3 ♘f6 6 ♘c3 ♗e7 7 ♘f3 0-0 8 0-0 ♗bd7 9

♗c4 ♘b6 10 ♗b3 Keres-Lilienthal, Moscow 1941.

B351 5 ♘d2
B352 5 ♕e2
B353 5 de

For 5 ♘c3 see B342, p.102.

B351

    5 ♘d2 (65)
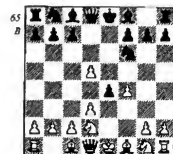
B3511 5 ... e3?!
B3512 5 ... ♗f5
B3513 5 ... ed!

B3511

    5 ...   e3?!

A dubious continuation.

    6 ♘c4   ♘xd5
    7 ♕f3!

This is stronger than 7 ♘xe3 ♘xf4 8 g3 ♘g6 9 ♗g2 ♗d6 10 ♘f3 0-0 11 0-0, which also gives White a slight advantage, Keres-Stalda, corres 1933.

    7 ...   ♗e7

Pachman's recommendation 7 ... b5?! is not good: 8 ♘xe3 ♗b7 when Pachman considers that Black has sufficient initiative for the sacrificed pawn. After 9 ♕e4+

(also good is 9 d4! a6 10 a4) 9 ... ♗e7 10 ♘f5 ♘c6 11 ♘xg7+ ♔f8 12 ♘h5! (this is better than 12 ♘f5 ♕d7 13 ♘f3 ♘f6 14 ♘e5 ♕e6 15 ♘d4 ♕d6 winning a piece for three pawns) Black is left a pawn down without any initiative.

    8 ♘xe3   ♘xe3
    9 ♗xe3   0-0
    10 ♕f2!

In Damjanović-Gligorić, Zagreb 1965, the weaker 10 ♕e2 was played: 10 ... ♘c6 11 ♘e3 ♗f6 12 0-0-0 ♖e8 13 ♘d5 ♗d4 14 c4 ♗e6 15 ♕f2 ♗xc3 16 ♘xe3 ♕d4 17 ♖d2 ♖ad8 18 ♘c2 ♕f6 with approximately equal chances.

After 10 ♕f2! ♕d5 11 ♘f3 it is not clear whether Black has sufficient compensation for his pawn minus.

B3512

    5 ...   ♗f5

This move, which leads to great complications, is not as reliable as 5 ... ed!.

    6 de   ♘xe4 (66)

6 ... ♗xe4?! can be met by 7 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 and now:

a) 8 ♗e3 ♕h4+ 9 g3 ♘xg3 10 ♘f3 a1) 10 ... ♕h5 11 hg ♕xh1 12 ♕e2 with a strong attack.

a2) 10 ... ♕e7 11 hg ♕xe3+ 12 ♕e2 White has a small advantage in the endgame.

b) 8 ♘f3!? is possible. After the natural 8 ... ♗c5 9 ♕e2 ♗f2+ 10 ♔d1 ♕xd5+ 11 ♘d2 f5 12 ♕b5+! ♕xb5+ (12 ... c6? 13 ♕xb7

loses for Black) 13 ♗xb5+ ♘c6 (very bad is 13 ... c6 14 ♗d3 ♘c5 15 ♗xf5 0-0 16 ♕e4') 14 ♘xe4 fe 15 ♗e2 ♗b6 16 ♗e3 0-0 17 ♗xc6 bc 18 ♖hd1 ♖d6 19 c4! ♗xe3 20 ♔xe3 ♖hd8 21 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 22 ♖e1 ♖d3+ 23 ♔xe4 ♖d2 24 ♔f3 ♖xb2 25 ♖e7 White has a won endgame.
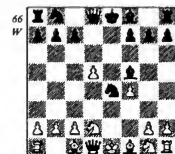
B35121 7 ♕e2
B35122 7 ♘gf3

B35121

    7 ♕e2

This leads to complicated play which has been little analysed. Black should reply

    7 ...   ♗b4!?
    8 ♕b5+

Also possible is 8 c3 0-0 and now:

a) Dangerous is 9 cb ♖e8 10 ♘c4 ♘c6 11 ♘f3 (or 11 dc? ♗h4+) 11 ... ♘xb4 with a very strong attack (Panov and Estrin).

b) 9 ♘xe4 ♖e8 10 cb ♖xe4 11 ♗e3 ♕e7 12 ♔f2 ♕d7 13 ♕d2 (inferior is 13 ♕h5 g6 14 ♕g5 ♖xe3 15

Qxe7 Rxe7 16 Nf3 Nf6 with the better endgame) 13 ... Re8 14 Bd4 Nf6 15 Nf3. In Keres' opinion, is difficult for Black to demonstrate that his attack compensates for the sacrificed material.

8	...	Nc6
9	c3	a6

Suggested by Estrin.

10 Qd3

White has several alternatives:

a) Kaila-Ridala, Finland 1955, ended in catastrophe for White after 10 Qc4 Nd4 11 cd? (this loses, whilst 11 Qd3! would have set Black difficult problems) 11 ... 0-0 12 a3 Ba5 13 b4 Bb6 14 Nxe4 Re8 15 Be3 Rxe4 16 0-0-0 Qe7 etc.

b) 10 Qc4! leads to complicated play which requires practical testing. 10 ... b5 11 Qxc6+ Bd7 12 Qxa8 Nxa8 13 cb Nf6 14 Be2; or 13 ... Qxd5 14 Nxe4 Qxe4 15 Ne2 Qxb4+ 16 Bf2 0-0 17 a3 with the better chances for White.

c) A position similar to that in b) arises, but with an important extra tempo for Black in exchange for the insignificant b-pawn, after 10 Qxb7 Nd6 11 Qxc6+ Bd7 12 Qxa8 Qxa8 13 cb 0-0, when White has a difficult position.

10	...	Nxc3
11	Qxf5	Qe7+
12	Be2	Qxe2

13 Nxe2 Qxe2+ 14 Kxe2 Nd4+ 15 Kd3 Nxf5 16 Re1 Kd7 Black has a slight advantage in the endgame (Keres).

B35122

7	Ngf3	Bc5

a) Estrin's and Panov's suggestion 7 ... Be7?! is dubious because of 8 Nd1! (but not the line recommended by Keres: 8 Bc4 c6 9 Nxe4 Bxe4 10 d6 because of the zwischenzug 10 ... Bxf3!. If Black were to take the d-pawn there would follow 11 Bxf7+!) Now 8 ... Bh4+ can be met by 9 g3 Qxg3 10 hg (10 Bb5+? loses to 10 ... c6 11 hg Bxg3+ 12 Kf1 Qxd5) 10 ... Bxg3+ 11 Ke2 Bg4+ 12 Nd3 0-0 13 Qd3 and Black does not have sufficient compensation for the piece.

b) Also in White's favour is 7 ... Bb4? Bc3 9 Qe7 9 Ne5.

8	Bd3	Nxd2

Bad is 8 ... Nf2 9 Qe2+ Qe7 10 Qxe7+ Bxe7 11 Bxf5 Nxh1 12 Bb3.

9	Bxf5	Nxf3+
10	Bxf3	0-0
11	Bd2	Re8+
12	Kd1	

White's extra pawn and the two bishops should bring him victory (Keres).

B3513

5	...	ed!
6	Bxd3	Nxd5 (67)

Also playable is 6 ... Qxd5 7 Ngf3 Bg4 8 Qe2+ Be7 9 Ne4 Nc6 10 Nxf6+ gf 11 Be4 Qe6 12 h3 Bxf3 13 Bxf3 Qd4 14 Qxe6 Nxf3+ 15 Kf2 fg 16 Kxf3 with equal chances, Efremov-Abramson, USSR corres 1960.

67
W

7		Qe2+

Inferior is 7 Ne4 Nb4, e.g. 8 Bb5–c6 9 Qxd8+ Bxd8 and now:

a) 10 Ba4 Bf5 11 Bg5 Bxc2 12 Nxf7+ Ke8 13 Bxc2 Nxc2+ 14 Kd1 Nxa1 15 Rxh8 Ba6 16 Bd2 Rd8 17 Bc1 Bb4 18 Bxb4 Nxb4 19 Nf3 Be7 20 Re1+ Bf6 21 Re4 c5 22 Ng5 Rxh8 23 g4 Nd3+ and Black wins, Durao-Robatsch, Malaga 1964. Minić suggests 18 Bc3 as a possible improvement for White, but Black can also play better with 11 ... Ke8 12 Nd1 f6 13 Ngf3 Nba6 with more comfortable development for Black.

b) 10 Bd3 Nxd3+ 11 cd Na6 12 Nf3 f6 13 h3 Be7 14 Bd2 Nb4 15 Bxb4 Bxb4 16 Kf2 Re8 17 a3 Bf8 18 Rhe1 Bc6 19 Bd4 Bd5 with a big advantage to Black, Damjanović-Pachman, Sarajevo 1966.

7	...	Qe7!

Euwe's recommendation. Also possible is 7 ... Be7 8 Ne4 Nc6 with an equal game.

8	Ne4	Nb4
9	Bb5+	

It is doubtful whether 9 Be3 Nxd3+ 10 cd Bf5 is any stonger for White.

9	...	Nbc6
10	c3	Bf5!

Black's position is better.

B352

5		Qe2

Contemporary theory regards this move with distrust. With accurate play Black has several ways of obtaining at least an equal game.

B3521	5 ...	Bc5
B3522	5 ...	Qxd5
B3523	5 ...	Bf5
B3524	5 ...	Bg4

B3521

5	...	Bc5

This is undoubtedly the weakest of Black's alternatives.

6	de	0-0
7	Nc3	Re8

If 7 ... Nxe4 8 Nxe4 Re8 9 Qc4 Bxg1 10 Rxg1 Bf5 11 Bd3 Bxe4 12 Bxe4 b5 (12 ... f5? 13 d6+) 13 Qd3 f5 14 Be3 Rxe4 15 0-0-0 and White retains the pawn with a good position.

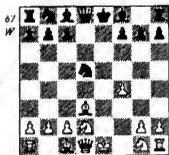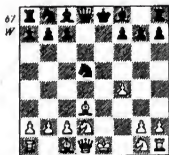| 8	Bd2	Nxe4

Or 8 ... Bxg1? 9 Rxg1 Bg4 10 Qc4 Nxe4 11 Bxe4 f5 12 d6+ Kf8 13 dc Qh4+ 14 g3 Qxh2 15 c8Q and White wins.

9	Nxe4	f5
10	0-0-0	Rxe4
11	Qd3	Rd4
12	Qb3	

♕xe7 ♖xe7 16 ♘f3 ♘f6 with the better endgame) 13 ... ♖e8 14 ♗d4 ♘f6 15 ♘f3. In Keres' opinion, is is difficult for Black to demonstrate that his attack compensates for the sacrificed material.

8 ... ♘c6
9 c3 a6

Suggested by Estrin.

10 ♕d3

White has several alternatives:

a) Kaila-Ridala, Finland 1955, ended in catastrophe for White after 10 ♕a4 ♗d4 11 cd? (this loses, whilst 11 ♕d3! would have set Black difficult problems) 11 ... 0-0 12 a3 ♗a5 13 b4 ♗b6 14 ♘xe4 ♖e8 15 ♗e3 ♖xe4 16 0-0-0 ♕e7 etc.

b) 10 ♕c4! leads to complicated play which requires practical testing. 10 ... b5 11 ♕xc6+ ♗d7 12 ♕xa8 ♕xa8 13 cb ♘f6 14 ♗e2; or 13 ... ♕xd5 14 ♘xe4 ♕xe4 15 ♘e2 ♕xb4+ 16 ♔f2 0-0 17 a3 with the better chances for White.

c) A position similar to that in b) arises, but with an important extra tempo for Black in exchange for the insignificant b-pawn, after 10 ♕xb7 ♘d6 11 ♕xc6+ ♗d7 12 ♕xa8 ♕xa8 13 cb 0-0, when White has a difficult position.

10 ... ♘xc3
11 ♕xf5 ♕e7+
12 ♗e2 ♕xe2

13 ♕xe2 ♕xe2+ ♔xe2 ♘d4+ 15 ♔d3 ♘xf5 16 ♖e1 ♔d7 Black has a slight advantage in the endgame (Keres).

B35122

7 ♘gf3 ♗c5

a) Estrin's and Panov's suggestion 7 ... ♗e7?! is dubious because of 8 ♘d5! (but not the line recommended by Keres: 8 ♗c4 c6 9 ♘xe4 ♗xe4 10 d6 because of the zwischenzug 10 ... ♗xf3!. If Black were to take the d-pawn there would follow 11 ♗xf7+!) Now 8 ... ♗h4+ can be met by 9 g3 ♘xg3 10 hg (10 ♗b5+? loses to 10 ... c6 11 hg ♗xg3+ 12 ♔f1 ♕xd5) 10 ... ♗xg3+ 11 ♔e2 ♗g4+ 12 ♘df3 0-0 13 ♕d3 and Black does not have sufficient compensation for the piece.

b) Also in White's favour is 7 ... ♗b4? ♗d5 9 ♕e7 9 ♘e5.

8 ♗d3 ♘xd2

Bad is 8 ... ♘f2 9 ♕e2+ ♕e7 10 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 11 ♗xf5 ♘xh1 12 ♘b3.

9 ♗xf5 ♘xf3+
10 ♗xf3 0-0
11 ♗d2 ♖e8+
12 ♔d1

White's extra pawn and the two bishops should bring him victory (Keres).

B3513

5 ... ed!
6 ♗xd3 ♘xd5 (67)

Also playable is 6 ... ♕xd5 7 ♘gf3 ♗g4 8 ♕e2+ ♗e7 9 ♘e4 ♘c6 10 ♘xf6+ gf 11 ♗e4 ♕e6 12 h3 ♗xf3 13 ♗xf3 ♕d4 14 ♗xe6 ♘xf3+ 15 ♔f2 fg 16 ♔xf3 with equal chances, Efremov-Abramson, USSR corres 1960.

67
W

(chess diagram)

7 ♕e2+

Inferior is 7 ♘e4 ♘b4, e.g. 8 ♗b5– c6 9 ♕xd8+ ♗xd8 and now:

a) 10 ♗a4 ♗f5 11 ♗g5 ♗xc2 12 ♘xf7+ ♔e8 13 ♗xc2 ♘xc2+ 14 ♔d1 ♘xa1 15 ♘xh8 ♗a6 16 ♗d2 ♖d8 17 ♔c1 ♗b4 18 ♗xb4 ♘xb4 19 ♘f3 ♗e7 20 ♖e1+ ♗f6 21 ♖e4 c5 22 ♘g5 ♖xh8 23 g4 ♘d3+ and Black wins, Durao-Robatsch, Malaga 1964. Minić suggests 18 ♗c3 as a possible improvement for White, but Black can also play better with 11 ... ♔e8 12 ♔d1 f6 13 ♘gf3 ♗ba6 with more comfortable development for Black.

b) 10 ♗d3 ♘xd3+ 11 cd ♘a6 12 ♘f3 f6 13 h3 ♗e7 14 ♗d2 ♘b4 15 ♗xb4 ♗xb4 16 ♔f2 ♖e8 17 a3 ♗f8 18 ♖he1 ♗c6 19 ♘d4 ♗d5 with a big advantage to Black, Damjanović-Pachman, Sarajevo 1966.

7 ... ♕e7!

Euwe's recommendation. Also possible is 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♘e4 ♘c6 with an equal game.

8 ♘e4 ♘b4
9 ♗b5+

It is doubtful whether 9 ♗e3 ♘xd3+ 10 cd ♗f5 is any stonger for White.

9 ... ♘bc6
10 c3 ♗f5!

Black's position is better.

B352

5 ♕e2

Contemporary theory regards this move with distrust. With accurate play Black has several ways of obtaining at least an equal game.

B3521 5 ... ♗c5
B3522 5 ... ♕xd5
B3523 5 ... ♗f5
B3524 5 ... ♗g4

B3521

5 ... ♗c5

This is undoubtedly the weakest of Black's alternatives.

6 de 0-0
7 ♘c3 ♖e8

If 7 ... ♘xe4 8 ♘xe4 ♖e8 9 ♕c4 ♗xg1 10 ♖xg1 ♗f5 11 ♗d3 ♘xe4 12 ♗xe4 b5 (12 ... f5? 13 d6+) 13 ♕d3 f5 14 ♗e3 ♖xe4 15 0-0-0 and White retains the pawn with a good position.

8 ♗d2 ♘xe4

Or 8 ... ♗xg1? 9 ♖xg1 ♗g4 10 ♕c4 ♘xe4 11 ♘xe4 ♗f5 12 d6+ ♔f8 13 dc ♕h4+ 14 g3 ♕xh2 15 c8♕ and White wins.

9 ♘xe4 f5
10 0-0-0 ♖xe4
11 ♕d3 ♖d4
12 ♕b3

White is a pawn up with a good position (Nenarokov).

B3522

5 ... ♕xd5

This move is unjustly condemned by many manuals.

6 ♘c3 ♗b4
7 ♗d2 ♗xc3
8 ♗xc3 ♗g4

Perhaps stronger are:

a) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♘xf6 ed 10 ♕e5 ♕c6! 11 ♗e7 (if 11 ♗xd3, 11 ... ♘d7) 11 ... ♕xc2 12 ♘f3 ♘c6 and Black wins.

wins. White should play 11 ♕g5 with a slight advantage after 11 ... ♕xf6 12 ♕xf6 gf 13 ♗d3.

b) 8 ... ♘bd7 9 de! (9 0-0-0? would be met by 9 ... ♕xa2 10 de ♕a1+ 11 ♗d2 ♕a4 with advantage to Black) 9 ... ♕xe4 10 ♗xg7 ♖g8 11 ♖d1 ♕e6 12 ♗d4 h6 13 ♕c4 ♕e7 with unclear play.

9 de ♗xe2

White obtained the advantage in Reti-Tarrasch, Göteborg 1920, after 9 ... ♕xe4 10 ♕xe4+ ♘xe4 11 ♗xg7 ♖g8 12 ♗e5 ♘c6 13 ♗d3 ♘xe5 14 ♗xg4 ♘c4 15 ♗xb7 ♖b8 16 ♗c6+ ♗d7 17 ♗d7+ ♔xd7 18 0-0-0+.

10 ed ♗xf1
11 ♔xf1 ♘xd5
12 ♗xg7 ♖g8

13 ♖e1+ ♔d7 14 ♖d1 ♔c6 15 ♗d4 ♘xf4 16 ♘f3 ♗d7. So far we have been following two well-known games: Reti-Spielmann, Stockholm 1919, and Bronstein-Szabo, Moscow

1949. In the first White got an advantage with 17 ♗e3 ♘e6 (not 17 ... ♘xg2 because of 18 ♘d4+ ♔b6 19 ♗f2 etc.) 18 ♗f2, in the second by 17 g3 ♘e6 18 ♗e3.

B3523

5 ... ♗f5
6 de

Weak is 6 ♘c3 ♗b4 7 ♗d2 0-0! (Levenfish).

6 ... ♘xe4

After 6 ... ♗xe4 7 ♘c3 ♕e7 8 ♘xe4 ♕xe4 9 ♘f3 ♗d7 10 ♗e3 0-0-0 11 0-0-0 ♘df6 12 g3 ♕xd5 13 ♗h3+ ♔b8 14 ♗d4! White's position is preferable. Fatal for White would be the plausible 14 ♖he1? because of 14 ... ♘dc3 and Black wins.

7 ♘c3 ♕e7
8 ♘b5

This is stronger than the continuation of Bhend-Unzicker, Zürich 1959: 8 ♗d2 ♘xc3 9 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 10 ♗xc3 ♗xc2 at a level game.

8 ... ♕d7?!

White threatened 9 ♘d4, to which Black now has the strong retort 9 ... ♗c5!. However, Black can do better with 8 ... g6 9 ♗e3 ♗g7 10 ♗d4 0-0 11 0-0-0 ♘a6 12 g4 ♗d7 13 ♗xg7 ♔xg7 14 d6 cd 15 ♘xd6 ♘ac5 when chances must be considered equal.

9 g4?!

Keres considers that White can hope for an advantage after 9 ♘f3?!

9 ... ♗c5
10 gf 0-0

11 ♗e3 ♖e8 12 0-0-0 ♘f2 with complicated play, Nei-Kondratiev, Tallinn 1948.

B3524

5 ... ♗g4

This is considered the strongest move, although, as has been seen, Black has other equally viable alternatives.

6 ♘f3

The old move, 6 ♕e3, is refuted by Pachman's 6 ... ♘xd5 7 ♕xe4+ ♗e7 8 f3 (perhaps 8 ♗e2 is better) 8 ... ♘f6 9 ♕xb7 ♘bd7 and the lead in development more than compensates for the sacrificed material.

6 ... ♕xd5

Weaker are:

a) 6 ... ♗b4+ 7 c3 0-0 8 cd and now:

a1) 8 ... ♖e8 9 e5 ♗a5 10 ♘a3 ♘xd5 11 ♗d2 and although Black has won back one of the sacrificed pawns, White, retaining the extra central pawn, has the better position, Filtser-Shishov, Moscow 1958.

a2) 8 ... ♗c5, Kuindzhi's recommendation, hardly changes the assessment of the variation after 9 ♘bd2 ♘xd5 10 ♘b3 ♗b6 11 ♗d2.

b) 6 ... ♗xf3 7 gf e3 8 ♗xe3 ♘xd5 9 ♗d4+ ♗e7 10 ♖g1! ♘xf4 11 ♕e4 ♘e6 12 ♗xg7 ♖g8 13 ♗d4 ♖xg1 14 ♗xg1 is also in White's favour (Kuindzhi).

9 ... ♗c5
10 gf 0-0

7 ♘bd2 (68)
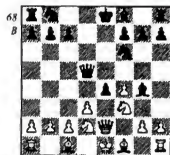
7 ... ♘c6!

An improvement. Alternatives are:

a) 7 ... ♗xf3 (until 7 ... ♘c6! the move almost exclusively played) 8 gf e3 9 ♘e4 and now either 9 ... ♗e7 (Nenarokov) or 9 ... ♗h5 (Panov and Estrin) are good enough to equalise, e.g. 9 ... ♗e7 10 ♗xe3 0-0 11 ♖g1 ♗h5 12 ♘c3 ♗h4+ 13 ♗d2 ♕d8 14 f3 ♖e8 15 ♖g4 ♘c6 16 ♗h3 ♘e5 17 ♖d4 ♕f6 18 ♕d5 ♕d6 19 ♕xc7 ♕xc7 20 ♖xa4 ♖ad8 21 ♘e4 ♘f6 22 ♖g1 ♘xf3+ 23 ♕xf3 ♘xe4+ with chances for both sides, Pachman-Pithart, Prague 1962.

b) 7 ... e3!? 8 ♕xe3 ♗e7 9 d4 (more reliable is 9 ♘e4! which has been tried in similar positions) 9 ... ♗xf3 10 ♗c4 ♗xg2! 11 ♗xd5 ♘xd5 12 ♕g1 ♗h4+ 13 ♔d1 0-0! 14 c4 and now instead of 14 ... ♗xf4 15 ♕e3 ♗xh1 16 ♕xf4 ♗f6 as was played, Black could have obtained an advantage by 14 ...
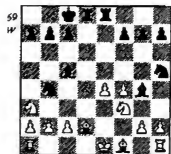
♗xh1! 15 ♕xh1 ♘e3+ 16 ♔e2 ♘c2 17 ♖b1 (17 ♔xb7 ♘c6!) 17 ... ♘xd4+.

c) Bad is 7 ... ♗f5? which has been wrongly recommended by several theoretical manuals: after 8 de ♗xe4 9 ♘g5 ♗b4 10 c3 Black loses a piece (Cheremisin).

8	de	♕h5
9	♕b5	0-0-0
10	♕xh5	♘xh5
11	♘c4	♘b4!

After 11 ... ♗xf3? 12 gf ♘d4 13 ♗d3 ♘xf3+ 14 ♗f2 Black wins back the pawn but gets into the worse position.

12	♘a3	♗c5
13	♗d2	♖he8 (69)

Black has more than enough compensation for the pawn. The game Gebauer-Serra, Varna Ol 1962, continued 14 ♘e5 ♘f6 15 ♗d3 ♘xe4 (Or 15 ... ♖xd3 16 cd ♘xd3+) 16 ♗xe4 f6 17 h3 fe 18 hg ef 19 0-0-0 ♖xe4 with a won game.

B353

5	de

One of the most fashionable lines at the moment.

B3531	6 ♕e2
B3532	6 ♗e3
B3533	6 ♘f3!

B3531

6	♕e2

This move of Charousek's was popular in olden days, but its reputation was dealt a crushing blow in the consultation game Bardeleben-Pillsbury, Berlin 1902, which continued

6	...	♕d5

The attempt to improve Black's play even further by 6 ... ♗b4+?! is ill-conceived:

a) 7 ♗d2 0-0 8 ♗xb4 ♖e8 9 ♔d1 ♗g4! 10 ♘f3 ♘c6! 11 ♗e1 ♕xd5+ 12 ♔c1 ♖ad8 13 ♘bd2 ♘xd2 14 ♕xd2 ♗xf3 15 gf ♕xf3 16 ♗g2 ♕h5 0-1, Tringov-Filchev, Bulgaria 1962.

b) But Black should get no advantage after 7 c3 0-0 8 cb ♖e8 9 ♗c3 ♘f6! 10 ♘c3 ♗g4 11 0-0-0 ♘xe3 12 ♖e1 ♗a6! with roughly equal chances.

7	♗d2	f5
8	g4	♘c6
9	c3	

Premature is 9 gf ♗xf5 10 ♗g2 ♘d4 11 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 12 ♕xe4+ ♕xe4 13 ♘xe4 ♘xc2+ 14 ♔d1 ♘xa1 15 ♗d2 0-0-0.

9	...	♗e7
10	♗g2	♕f7

11 ♘xe4 fe 12 ♗xe4 ♗h4+ 13 ♔f1 0-0 14 ♗g2 ♗e6 with a huge lead in development for Black.

B3532

6	♗e3

This move causes Black fewer problems than 6 ♘f3!.

6	...	♕h4+

The most logical reply.

a) Black fails to equalise with 6 ... ♗c5?. After 7 ♘c5 ♘xc5 8 ♕e2+ ♕e7 9 ♘c3 ♗g4 10 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 11? h3 ♗f5 12 0-0-0 h5 13 ♘f3 White has a won position, Spassky-Limbos, Varna 1962.

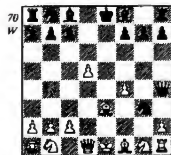b) Possible, however, is 6 ... ♗d6 7 ♘f3 0-0 and now:

b1) 8 ♗e4 ♘d7 9 0-0 ♖e8 10 ♖e1 ♘ef6 11 ♔h1 ♗g4 12 ♗g5 ♕b6 13 ♗b3 ♗xf4 with a roughly equal game, Bronstein-Unzicker, Moscow 1956.

b2) 8 ♗d3 ♖e8 9 0-0 ♘f6 10 ♘e5 ♘bd7 11 ♘c4 ♘f8

b21) 12 ♘xd6 ♖xe3! 13 ♘xc8 ♖xc8 14 c4 c6.

b22) 12 ♘c3 ♗b4 13 ♗d4 ♘xd5 14 ♘xd5 ♕xd5, the position is equal, Muchnik-Golubev, Moscow 1957.

7	♗g3	♘xg3 (70)

8	♘f3!

This leads to a microscopic advantage for White in the endgame.

Incorrect is the exchange sacrifice 8 hg? ♕xh1 9 ♕e2 and now:

a) 9 ... ♗b4+! 10 c3 ♗d6 11 ♗g2 ♕h6 12 ♗d4+ (12 f5? is met by 12 ... ♗xg3+ 13 ♔f1 ♕g4 or 13 ♗f2+ ♔d8 14 ♗xg3 ♖e8) 12 ... ♗d8, and Black himself threatens unpleasant things along the open central file, Tal-Trifunović, Havana 1963.

b) 9 ... ♕xd5 10 ♘c3 ♕d8! also led to an advantage for Black in Keres-Pruun, corres 1941 (after 10 ... ♕h6 11 f5 ♕e5 12 0-0-0 ♗g4 would have a strong attack) 11 ♗g2 ♗e7 12 ♘d5 (otherwise it is not clear how White will castle) 12 ... c6 13 ♘xe7 ♕xe7 14 0-0-0 ♗g4, stopping short any initiative for White.

8	...	♕e7!

Here the attempt to win the exchange has catastrophic consequences for Black: 8 ... ♕h5? 9 hg ♕xh1 10 ♕e2 ♗g4 11 ♘bd2 ♘d7 12 ♗d4+ ♔d8 13 0-0-0 ♕h5 14 ♗g2 ♗b4 15 ♘c4 ♖e8 16 ♕f2 ♖e4 17 ♗e3 (or 17 ♘e5) and White has a won position, Sochagin-Altshur, Leningrad 1971.

9	hg	♕xe3+
10	♕e2	♕xe2+
11	♗xe2	♗g4

12 ♘c3 ♗b4 13 ♗g5 ♗xe2 14 ♔xe2 ♗xc3 15 bc h6 16 ♔d3. Now, Spassky-Matanović, Belgrade

1964, continued 16 ... ♖f8? and White obtained a slight advantage by 17 ♘f3 ♘a6 18 ♖ae1+. After 16 ... 0-0 17 ♘e4 ♖d8 18 c4 c6 19 ♖h5 ♘a6 20 d6 b6 21 ♖d1 White also had a slight advantage, Listengarten-Kosikov, USSR 1973.

Editor's note: After 18 ♖ae1+, Spassky-Matanović continued: 18 ... ♔d7 19 c4 f6 20 ♔d4 b6 21 f5 ♘c5 22 ♕h4 ♖fe8 23 ♖e6 g5 24 ♘g6 ♘xe6 25 fe+ ♖xe6 26 de+ ♔xe6 27 ♖xh6 ♔f7 28 ♘e5+ fe+ 29 ♔xe5 c5 30 g4 ♖e2+ ♖f8 32 ♖h2 ♔d6 33 g4 ♖g8+ 34 ♔f4 ♖f8+ 35 ♔g3 ♔e6 36 ♖e2+ ♔d7 37 g5 ♖xe4 38 ♔g4 ♔c3 39 g6 c4 40 ♔g5 b5 41 g7 ½-½.

B3533

  6 ♘f3!   **♗c5**

The most logical reply. Black takes control of an important diagonal, thus hampering the harmonious development of the white pieces.

Considerably weaker is 6 ... ♗f5 7 ♗c3! and it is difficult for Black to find satisfactory counterplay to compensate for the missing pawn. Alekhine-Tarrasch, St. Petersburg 1914, went on 7 ... c6 8 ♗c4 b5 9 ♗b3 c5 10 d6! with a won position for White.

  7 ♕e2   **♗f5**

Other replies are unfavourable for Black, e.g.:

a) 7 ... ♗f2+ 8 ♔d1 ♕xd5+ 9 ♘fd2! (A very strong move. White concentrates all his forces on e4)

---

9 ... f5 10 ♘e3 ♕d4 11 ♘cxe4 fe 12 c3 ♕e3:

a1) 13 ♘xe4 ♕xe2+ 14 ♗xe2 ♗b6 15 ♘g5 with advantage to White, Maroczy-Burn, Ostende 1906.

a2) 13 ♕h5+ ♔f8 14 ♗c4 ♕xf4 15 ♕d5 with a won position for White in Reti-Breyer, Pressburg 1920.

b) 7 ... f5 and now:

b1) Bad is 8 ♘g3? 0-0 9 ♘xe4 fe 10 ♕xe4 ♗f5 with a strong attack for Black (Keres).

b2) 8 ♗e3 ♕xd5 9 ♘xc5 ♕xc5 10 ♘c3 with advantage to White, Spielmann-Wolf, Düsseldorf 1908.

c) 7 ... ♕e7 8 ♗e3 ♘a6 9 ♗xc5 ♘axc5 10 ♘bd2 0-0 11 0-0-0 f5 12 ♘d4 ♕f6 13 ♘xf5 ♕xf5 14 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 15 ♕f3 ♘d6 16 ♗d3 ♕d7 was Zuckerman-Reshevsky, Netanya 1971, and now 17 g4! would have given White a sizeable advantage.

  8 ♗e3

Spielmann-Tarrasch, Mährisch Ostrau 1923, took Bilguer's recommendation, 8 g4? and White lost quickly: 8 ... 0-0! 9 gf ♘e8 10 ♗g2 (if 10 ♕g2, very strong is 10 ... ♕xd5 11 ♗e2 ♘c6 12 ♘c3 ♕xf5 with numerous threats – Spielmann) 10 ... ♘f2 11 ♘e5 ♘xh1 12 ♗xh1 ♘d7 13 ♘c3 f6 Black has a won position.

  8 ...   **♕e7**

  9 ♗e3

After 9 ♘d2 (or 9 ♘xe4 ♗xe4 10 c4 c6!) 9 ... ♗f2+ 10 ♔d1 ♗b6 11 ♘xe4 ♗xe4 12 c4 c6 Black

---

stands better (Tartakower).

Now Black has:

B35331 9 ... ♘xc3?
B35332 9 ... ♗xe3

B35331

  9 ...   **♘xc3?**

This leads to a bad position for Black.

  10 ♗xc5   **♘e2**
  11 ♗xe7   **♘xf4**
  12 ♗a3!

This move, recommended by Tartakower long ago, is even stronger than the modern treatment 12 ♗g5 ♘xd5 13 0-0-0, which also gives Black a lot of bother.

  12 ...   **♘d7**

Black ought to reconcile himself to the inferior endgame after 12 ... ♘xd5 13 0-0-0 c6 14 ♘g5 ♘d7 15 ♗c4 ♗c6 16 ♖he1 as happened in V. Kuznetsov-Pozharsky, USSR 1963.

  13 0-0-0   **♗c4**

13 ... 0-0-0 fails to 14 ♖d4! ♘g6 15 g4

  14 ♘g5   **♗xd5**
  15 g3

Very pretty. Less strong is 15 ♖d4 f6! and Black saves himself, but 15 ♖e1+ or 15 ♗b5 were also strong (Keres).

  15 ...   **♗xh1**
  16 gf   **c5**

There is no other defence against 17 ♖e1+.

  17 ♗c4   **♗c6**
  18 ♘f7

White has a won position, Bronstein-Tal, USSR Team Ch, Riga 1968.

Editor's note: The game concluded 18 ... b5 19 ♘d6+ ♔e7 20 ♘xb5 ♖hf8 21 ♘d4 ♗g2 22 ♘e6 ♖f5 23 ♖g1 ♗e4 24 ♘c7 (the simple 24 ♖e1 would have won immediately – Bronstein) 24 ... ♖d8 25 ♖xg7+ ♔f6 26 ♖f7+ ♔g6 27 ♖e7 ♘f6 28 ♘e6 ♖c8 29 b3 ♖h5 30 ♘g5 ♗d5 31 ♗d3+ ♔h6 32 ♗b2 c4 33 ♗f5 c3 34 ♖xc8 cb+ 35 ♔xb2 ♖xh2 36 ♖xa7 ♖f2 37 ♖a4 ♔g6 38 ♖d4 h5 39 a4 h4 40 a5 ♗g2 41 a6 ♘h5 42 ♗b7 ♘xf4 43 ♖xf4 1-0.
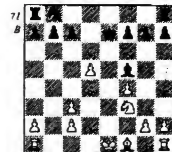
B35332

  9 ...   **♗xe3**
  10 ♕xe3   **♘xc3**
  11 ♕xe7+   **♔xe7**
  12 bc *(71)*

In spite of the apparent simplicity of this position, it is not easy for Black to achieve equality, e.g.:

a) 12 ... ♗xc2 13 ♔d2

a1) 13 ... ♗g6 14 ♖e1+ ♔d8 15 ♘d4 and White stands better,

Wheatcroft-Keres, Margate 1939. a2) 13 ... ♗a4 14 ♖e1+ ♔d8 (14 ... ♔d6 15 ♘g5 ♔d5 16 ♖e4! wins for White, Bronstein-Vaisman, Sandomierz 1976) 15 ♖c4 ♗c8 16 ♗c4 b5 17 ♗b3 ♘a6 18 ♖he1 with advantage to White in Heuer-Kondratiev, Tallinn 1946.

b) 12 ... ♗e4 and now:

b1) 13 c4? ♗xf3 14 gf ♘d7 leaves Black a pawn down, but the position is equal.

b2) 13 ♘g5! ♗xd5 14 0-0-0. In this position Black has a difficult

defence ahead. If 14 ... ♖d8 15 c4 ♗e6 16 ♖xd8 ♔xd8 17 ♘xe6+ fe 18 ♗d3 h6 19 ♖e1 ♔d7 20 ♖e3 and 21 ♖g3 wins. The game Krnić-Cortlever, Wijk aan Zee 1972, saw 14 ... ♗e6 15 ♘xe6 fe 16 ♗c4 ♖f8? 17 ♖he1 ♖f6 18 f5 and Black was once again in a mess. Keres suggests 16 ... ♘d7 17 ♖he1 e5! as the correct way to defend. Whether Black survives after 18 f5 is a matter for speculation. Black is clearly in need of improvements in this line.

15 The King's Gambit Declined

1	e4	e5
2	f4	

The King's Gambit Accepted is characterised by numerous forced variations where the slightest slip by either side can have fatal consequences.

In the King's Gambit Declined play proceeds, in the majority of cases, more quietly: there are considerably fewer sharp lines involving sacrifices requiring deep and accurate calculation.

Nevertheless, declining the gambit cannot be justified. White retains the initiative for a long time whilst also having material equality. There are four ways of declining the gambit, of which the first will be dealt with very briefly:

A 2 ... d6
B 2 ... ♘f6
C 2 ... ♗c5
D 2 ... ♕h4+

A

2	...	d6
3	♘f3	♘f6

It was not too late to transpose into the Fischer defence with 3 ... ef.

4	♘c3	♘c6
5	♗b5!	♗d7
6	d3	

Also not bad is 6 d4!?.

6	...	ef

After 6 ... ♗e7 7 ♗xc6 ♗xc6 8 fe Black has no compensation for the pawn.

7	♗xf4	

White has the freer game (A. Rabinovich).

B

2	...	♘f6

A relatively rarely met line which gives Black no hope at all of obtaining active counterplay.

3	fe	♘xe4
4	♘f3	♘g5

The continuation 4 ... d5 5 d3 ♘c5, which can be reached by force by another order of moves (3 ♘f3 d5 4 fe ♕xe4 5 d3 etc.) leads to a difficult game for Black after 6 d4 ♘e4 7 ♗d3 ♗e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 c4 ♗e6 (better is 9 ... c6) 10 ♕c2 c6 11 ♘c3 ♘xc3 12 ♗xh7+ ♔h8 13 bc, Bronstein-Kostro, Tiflis 1970. On 6 ... ♘e6 White again got the better game in Bronstein-Kholmov, USSR 1975, after 7 c4 c6 8 ♘c3 ♗e7 9 ♗e3 0-0 10 ♕d2 b6 11 ♗d3 ♘a6 12 cd cd 13 ♖d1 f5 14 ef ♖xf6 15 0-0 ♖ac7 16 ♘e5.

The attempt to avoid this variation by 4 ... de? (after 3 ♘f3 d5 4 fe) is quite unsatisfactory for Black, as Cheremisin-Ravinsky, Moscow 1959, showed: 5 ef ef 6 ♕xf3 ♘c6 7 ♗b5! ♕xf6 8 ♕xf6 gf and now, instead of 9 0-0? as played, 9 d4 would have ensured White a big advantage.

5 d4!

It is precisely this move, and not 5 c3? with the aim of avoiding the exchange of queens, which causes Black the greatest problems.

After 5 c3? Black has:

a) 5 ... ♘xf3+?6 ♕xf3 ♕g5 7 ♗e2 and now:

a1) 7 ... ♕xe5 8 0-0 with a very strong attack, Chigorin-Bernstein, Kiev 1903.

a2) Wade's recommendation 7 ... ♘c6 8 0-0 ♘xe5 9 ♕e4 ♕e7 10 d4 ♘g6 11 ♕f3 hardly changes the assessment of the position.

b) 5 ... d6! 6 d4 ♘xf3+ 7 ♕xf3

♕h4+ 8 g3 ♕g4 9 ♕xg4 ♗xg4 10 ♗g2 c6 and Black equalises (Ravinsky).

5	...	♘xf3+
6	♕xf3	♕h4+
7	♕f2	♕xf2−
8	♔xf2	♘c6 (72)
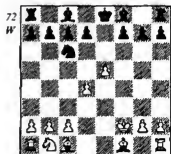
All this had been well known since Bronstein-Bernstein, Paris 1954, where after 9 ♗e3 d6 10 ed ♘xd6 11 ♘c3 ♗f5 12 ♖c1 a6 13 ♗e2 0-0-14 a3 ♖ae8 Black equalised without difficulty.

White's following move, however, demonstrates that even in this relatively simple position it is not easy for Black to achieve equality. Therefore, instead of Black's 8th move, better perhaps is 8 ... d6!? with the possible continuation 9 ♗f4 ♘c6 10 ♗b5 ♗d7.

9		d6
10	de	♗xd6
11	♘d2	♗e6
12	♘e4	♗e7
13	♘g5	♗xg5
14	♗xg5	

White's position is (slightly − ed) better, Fischer-Wade, Vinkovci

1968. *Editor's note:* Fischer won the ending after 14 ... h6 15 ♗h4 g5 16 ♗g3 0-0-0 17 ♗b5 f5 18 ♗xc6 bc 19 ♘c5 ♖hg8 20 h4 g4 21 h5 g3 22 ♘xg3 ♗g4 23 ♖h4 ♖dg8 24 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 25 ♖e1 ♗d7 26 ♖e5 f4 27 ♗h2 ♖h4 28 ♗g1 ♗d5 29 g3 ♖g4 30 ♗h2 f3 31 b3 a6 32 c4 ♖xd4 33 cd ♖d2+ 34 ♔xf3 ♖xh2 35 dc+ ♔xc6 36 ♖e6+ ♔d7 37 ♖xh6 ♖xa2 38 ♖g6 1-0.

C

2 ... ♗c5

Without a doubt a more logical continuation than 2 ... ♘f6. Black tries to exploit the weakening of the white king's position and to prevent White's king-side castling.

3 ♘f3 d6

Alternatives:

a) 3 ... ♘c6?! leads to unclear complications after:

a1) 4 fe d6! (had is 4 ... ♘xe5 5 ♘xe5 ♕h4+ 6 g3 ♕xe4+ 7 ♕e2 ♕xh1 8 ♘g6+) 5 ed ♕xd6 and Black has strong pressure for the pawn (Schlechter). However, such a move order cannot be highly recommended since White has a stronger reply in:

a2) 4 ♘c3! forcing the reply 4 ... d6 5 ♘a4 ♗g4, when White, in Muchnik-Volovich, Moscow 1957, could have obtained an advantage by 6 ♘xc5 dc 7 ♗b5!.

b) 3 ... d5? met a beautiful refutation in Zelevinsky-Ravinsky, Moscow 1962: 4 ♘xe5 de 5 ♕h5! ♕e7 6 ♗c4 g6 7 ♕e2 ♘h6 8 ♘c3

♘d7 9 ♘d5 ♕d5 ♕d6 10 ♕xe4 0-0 11 b4! c6 12 bc ♘xc5 13 ♗xf7 ♘xf7 14 ♘c7+ ♔h8 15 ♘xd6 ♘xd6 15 ♘c7+ 14 ♘c7+ ♗g7 15 ♗b4? ♗h6 16 ♘e3 ♘a4 17 f5+ g5 18 ♕h3 mate.

C1	4	b4
C2	4	♗c4
C3	4	c3
C4	4	♘c3

4 d4 ed 5 ♗d3 has never brought White any success.

C1

4 b4

The same holds true for this move as for 4 d4.

4 ... ♗b6!

After 4 ... ♗xb4 5 c3 ♗a5 6 ♗c4 White has an active position for the pawn.

5 ♗b2

In Khokhlovkin-Ladyzhensky, USSR 1959. 5 d4?! cd 6 ♗d3 was tried here, which gives White more chances of obtaining an attack than the immediate 4 d4.

5	...	♘f6
6	fe	♘xe4
7	d4	de
8	♗d3	♘d6!

Suggested by Levenfish.

The magazine *Shakhmaty* in 1930 missed this possibility in its analysis and assessed the final position after 8 ... f5 9 0-0 ♘c6 10 c4 ♗xd4+ 11 ♘xd4 ed 12 b5 ♘e5 13 ♗xe4 fe 14 ♗xd4 as favourable to White.

The strong 8 ... ♘d6! completely

alters the assessment of the variation: e.g. 9 de ♘f5 or 9 ♘xe5 ♕h4+ 10 g3 ♕h3 when White's position is rather forlorn.

C2

    4 ♗c4   ♘f6

Or 4 ... ♘c6 when after 5 d3 ♗e6! is good for Black, as in the main variation. 5 ... ♗g4 is foiled by 6 c3! but not 6 h3? ♗xf3 7 ♕xf3 ♘d4 8 ♕g3 ♘xc2+ 9 ♔d1 ♘xa1 10 ♕xg7 ♕f6 11 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 and Black wins.

    5 d3

White does best to transpose to C4 by 5 ♘c3 ♘f6 5 ♗c4).

5 d3 allows Black to seize the initiative.

    5 ... ♗c6!
    6 ♗xe6 fe
    7 fe

7 ♘c3 0-0 8 ♘a4 ♗b6 9 ♘xb6 ab 10 fe de 11 ♘xe5 ♘xe4! favours Black, Chigorin-Wolf, Ostend 1905.

    7 ... de
    8 ♘c3

Dangerous is 8 ♘xe5 ♕d4 9 ♘g4 ♘xg4 10 ♕xg4 ♕f2+ 11 ♔d1 0-0 12 ♕xe6+ ♔h8 with a very strong attack for Black (Levenfish).

    8 ... ♘c6
    9 ♗g5 h6

10 ♗h4 ♕d6 11 ♕d3 0-0 12 0-0-0 g5 with the better position for Black in Spielmann-Nimzovich, match 1907.

C3

    4 c3

Aggressive, but not sufficiently reliable. White strives to seize the centre, but because of his backwardness in development the plan is not very effective. The White pawns often come under prolonged pressure from the black pieces and because of this, they restrict the activity of their own forces.

C31 4 ... ♘f6
C32 4 ... ♗g4
C33 4 ... f5

C31

    4 ... ♘f6
    5 fe

The immediate 5 d4 leads to a position in which White's pawn centre constantly needs defending. Characteristic in this respect was the game Filtser-Ravinsky, Moscow 1959: 5 ... ed 6 cd ♗b4! (stronger than 6 ... ♗b6 7 ♘c3 0-0 8 e5 de 9 fe ♕d5 10 ♗g5 f6 11 ♗c4! c6 12 ef gf 13 ♗h6 ♖e8 14 ♔f2 with advantage to White, Suttles-Addison, US Ch 1965-6) 7 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 8 ♘bxd2 ♕e7 9 ♗d3 0-0 (also good is the immediate 9 ... ♕d5) 10 0-0 (here 10 ♕e2 is stronger) 10 ... ♘d5!, when Black has a considerable advantage.

    5 ... de *(73)*

C311 6 d4
C312 6 ♘xe5!
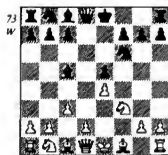
C311

    6 d4

This move, recommended by various manuals, is dubious.

    6 ... ed
    7 cd

After 7 e5 ♘d5 8 cd ♗b5+ 9 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 10 ♕xd2 ♗g4 Black has a good position.

    7 ... ♗b4+

a) 7 ... ♗b6 is also playable.

b) The attempt to seize the initiative by 7 ... ♘xe4?! is inadequate, not because of:

b1) 8 de ♕xd1+ 9 ♔xd1 ♘f2+ 10 ♔e1 ♘xh1 with the better chances for Black, but because of:

b2) 8 ♕e2! ♗b4+ 9 ♗d2 0-0 10 ♕xe4! and Black does not have sufficient compensation for the sacrificed piece.

    8 ♗d2 ♕e7!

Suggested by Euwe.

    9 e5 ♘d5

with the unpleasant threat of 10 ... ♘e3.

C312

    6 ♘xe5! ♕e7

    7 d4   ♗d6
    8 ♘c4

Black also obtains a satisfactory game after 8 ♘f3 ♘xe4 9 ♗e2 0-0 10 0-0 c5 11 ♘bd2 ♘xd2 12 ♗xd2, Charousek-Janowski, Berlin 1897.

    8 ... ♘xe4
    9 ♘xd6+ cd

After 9 ... cd the position is equal. Black can also play 9 ... ♘xd6+ 10 ♕e2 ♗e6 11 ♗f4 ♘c6 12 ♘d2 0-0-0 13 0-0-0 ♖he8 14 b3 g5 15 ♗xd6 ♕xd6 16 ♕f2 ♗g4 (Prandstetter-Augustin, Czechoslovak Ch 1974) when Black's position was at the very least equal.

C32

    4 ... ♗g4 *(74)*

An obvious-looking move, but not good enough to achieve equality for Black. Practice has shown that White gets the somewhat better position with ease.
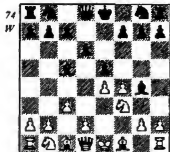
    5 fe

Other moves that have been played are:

a) 5 ♗c4 ♘f6 and now:

a1) 6 fe de 7 Bxf7+ Kf8 8 Bb3 Nxe4 9 Qe2 Nf6 10 Qxe5 with the better game for White, Mikenas-Villard, Pärnu 1950.

a2) Also possible is the quieter 6 6 d3 Nc6 7 b4 Bb6 8 a4 a6 9 h3 Bxf3 10 Qxf3 Qe7 11 f5, when White's position is better, Morphy-Bird, off-hand game, London 1858.

b) 5 h3 Bxf3 6 Qxf3 Nf6 7 fe de 8 Bc4 Nc6 9 d3 h6 10 Nd2 a6 11 Bb3 Qd7 12 Nf1 0-0-0 13 Bc2 and after 14 Be3 White has the advantage.

c) 5 d4? Bxf3 6 gf Qh4+ 7 Ke2 Bb6 8 Na3 f5 9 Nc4 fe 10 fe de 11 Nxe5 Nc6 12 Nxc6 bc 13 Bg2 Qh5 with advantage to Black, Lasker-Janowski, match 1910.

5 ... de
6 Qa4+! Bd7

a) Bad is 6 ... Qd7? 7 Bb5 c6 8 Nxe5! (Marshall).

b) On 6 ... Nc6 an error would be:

b1) 7 Bb5? Nf6! 8 d4 Bxd3 9 0-0 ed with advantage to Black, Spielmann-Wolf, Karlsbad 1923.

b2) White should play 7 Nxe5 Qh4+ 8 g3 Bf2+ 9 Kxf2 Qf6+ 10 Kg1 Qxe5 11 Bg2 with advantage (Levenfish).

7 Qc2 Bc6
Or 7 ... Qe7 8 d4 ed 9 cd Bb4+ 10 Nc3 Bc6 11 Bd3 Bxc3 12 bc Bxc4 13 Bxe4 f5 14 0-0 when White is better, Euwe-Maroczy, match 1921.

8 b4 Bd6
9 Bc4 Nf6

10 d3 Qe7 11 0-0-0-0 12 a4 White stands better, Bronstein-Panov, Moscow Ch 1947. *Editor's note:* 12 Bronstein's 'heedless white pawns' secured victory: 12 ... a5 13 b5 Nb8 14 Nbd2 Bg4 15 Nb3 b6 16 Be3 Nbd7 17 Rae1 Be6 18 Bxe6 Qxe6 19 Kh1 Qe7 20 Nbd2 Bg4 21 Rg1 h5 22 Nc4 g5 23 Nxd6+ cd 24 Nd2 f6 25 Nc4 Qb7 26 Bxb6 Nxb6 27 Nxa5+ Qc7 28 Nc6 Qe8 29 a5 Nd7 30 b6+ Kb7 31 a6+ Kxb6 32 Rb1 1-0.

A more restrained system of play has been used in recent years, using ideas from both this variation and C4. Here are two examples:

a) 4 Bc4 Nf6 5 d3 Nc6 6 c3 Bg4 7 b4 Bb6 8 h3 Bxf3 9 Qxf3 0-0 10 a4 a6 11 f5 Ba7 12 Ra2 Ra8 13 g4 Nb8 14 g5 Ne8 15 h4 f6 16 Qh5 g6 17 Qxh7+! Kxh7 18 h5 Kg7 19 hg Rh8 20 Rxh8 Kxh8 21 Rh2+ 1-0, Varetić-Savatević, Yugoslavia 1957.

b) 4 Bc4 Nc6 5 c3 Nf6 6 fe de 7 d3 0-0 8 Qe2 a5 9 a4 Be6 10 Bxe6 fe 11 Be3 Qe7 12 Bxc5 Qxc5 13 Na3 Rad8 14 Ng5 Rde8 15 Nc4 White has the advantage, Cioaltea-Radulescu, Bucharest 1964.

C33

4 ... f5
A sharp move leading to an extremely murky position.

5 fe
Other replies are inferior:

a) 5 Bc4 fe 6 Nxe5 and now:

a1) Accepting the sacrifice can have disastrous results: 6 ... de?

7 Qh5+ Kd7 8 Qf5+ Kc6 9 Qxe4+ Kb6 10 b4 Be7 11 d3 c6 12 Qxe5 c5 :3 bc Bxc5 14 Na3 Qd6 15 Rb1+ Nc6 16 Qe8+ Bd7 17 Qe4+ Kc7 18 Nxb7+ and wins, Levitsky-Salwe, Vilna 1912.

a2) 6 ... Qh4+! 7 g3 Qh3 8 d4 ed 9 Nxd3 Bg4 with advantage to Black.

b) 5 d4 ed 6 Bc4 (Black answers 6 cd with 6 ... fe) 6 ... fe 7 Qg5 de 8 Qxe4 dc 9 Qh5+ Kf8 10 Qxc5 Qe7 with the better position for Black (Keres).

5 ... de
6 d4 ed
7 Bc4! (75)

This move, which gives rise to great complications, was recommended by Reti. We have some interesting variations now.

C331 7 ... Nc6
C332 7 ... fe
C333 7 ... Nf6
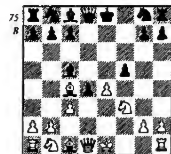
C331

7 ... Nc6
8 b4 Bb6
9 Qb3 Nh6

Black must defend against the dangerous check on his f7. After 9 ... Nf6? 10 b5 Na5 11 Bf7+ White wins.

10 Bg5
Recommended by Keres.

Réti's analysis is wrong here: 10 0-0 fe 11 Nxd4 (11 Bg5 is better) 11 ... Nxd4 12 Bf7+ Kf8? 13 cd Qxd4+ 14 Kh1. Réti considered this position favourable for White. However, after the very strong reply 12 ... Qe7! (Baskov) roles are reversed because of 13 Bg5+ Kf8 14 cd Bxd4+ 15 Kh1 Qxg5 and Black wins.

10 ... Qd6
11 Nbd2

White stands better, e.g. 11 ... dc 12 Qxc3 Bd4 13 Nxd4 Qxd4 14 Qxd4 Bxd4 15 Nxf7+ (also good is 16 Bc3) 16 ... Kxf7 17 Nc4 and despite queens having been exchanged, White has a dangerous attack.
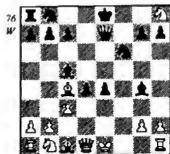
C332

7 ... fe
8 Ne5

Also possible is 8 Ng5 when now:

a) 8 ... Nf6 transposes back to the main variation, since 9 Nxe4? does not work because of 9 ... Qe7!.

b) 8 ... e3?! looks suspect because of 9 Bf7+! (but not 9 Nf7? Qh4+ 10 g3 Qe4 11 Rf1 Nf6 12 Nxh8 Nc6 with a winning attack – Keres) 9 ... Kf8 10 Bxg8 Qxg5 11 0-0+ Bf5

12 cd! (a mistake would be the obvious 12 ♘e6? because of 12 ... c2!). White has a won position.

   8 ...   ♘f6
   9 ♘f7   ♕e7
   10 ♘xh8   ♗g4 (76)

In Stoltz-Spielmann, match game, Switzerland 1932, 10 ... d3 was played. The game continued 11 ♗g5 ♗f2+ 12 ♔xf2 ♕c5+ 13 ♗e3 ♕xc4 14 h3 ♗e6 15 ♘d2 ♕d5 16 g4 ♘c6 17 c4 ♕d7 18 g5 ♗g4 19 ♕f1 ♗e2 20 ♕g2 with a won position for White.

10 ... ♗g4 is not much stronger. White plays 11 ♕b3 ♘bd7 12 ♕xb7 ♖b8 13 ♕c6 d3 14 b4! ♗b6 15 ♗g5 ♕e5 16 ♘f7 with a big advantage.

C333
   7 ...   ♘f6

A practically unjustifiable move. White obtains a solid opening advantage without being subject to the slightest danger.

   8 e5   ♘e4
   9 cd   ♗b4+

Black has even fewer prospects after 9 ... ♗b6? 10 ♘c3 ♘c6 11 ♗e3 ♘a5 12 ♗d3 and now:

a) Black does not have even practical chances after 12 ... 0-0 13 ♘xe4 fe 14 ♗xe4 ♘c4 15 ♗xh7+ ♔h8 16 ♗g5 ♕d5 17 ♗b1!.

b) 12 ... ♘xc3 13 bc 0-0 and now, as Keres has pointed out, White in Reti-Hromadka, Bad Pistyan 1922, could have put his opponent in a very difficult position with 14 c4!.

   10 ♗d2!

White achieves nothing after 10 ♗c2 c6 11 ♕b3 ♕e7 12 ♘c3 ♗xc3 13 bc b5 14 ♗d3 ♗e6 15 ♕c2 ♕f7 16 ♗xc4 fe 17 ♘g5 ♕g6, Stoltz-Flohr, match 1931.

   10 ...   ♘xd2
   11 ♘bxd2

In Keres' opinion it is difficult for Black to obtain sufficient counterplay in view of White's better development and his mobile centre. For example: 11 ... ♘d7 12 ♕b3 ♕e7 13 0-0-0 ♘b6 14 a3 ♗xd2+ 15 ♖xd2 c6 16 d5!.

C4
   4 ♘e3

The most accurate order of moves (see C2).

   4 ...   ♘f6
   5 ♗c4   ♘c6

It should be noted that this is also the most accurate move order for Black: by playing his king's knight out before his queen's knight he avoids the unpleasant pinning of his queen's knight.

Instead of 5 ... ♘c6, less

attractive is 5 ... ♗e6 6 ♗xe6 fe 7 fe de 8 ♘xe5 ♕d4 9 ♘d3 and now:

a) The attempt to avoid the exchange of queens by 9 ... ♗b6, as was played in Melikhov-Sarkisyan, USSR corres 1955-6, can hardly be recommended. After 10 ♕e2 ♘c6 11 b3 White stands better.

b) 9 ... ♕xe4 10 ♕xe4 ♕xe4+ 11 ♕e2 ♕xe2+ 12 ♔xe2 with the slightly better endgame for White (Keres).

   6 d3   ♗g4 (77)
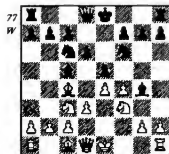
The most accurate but probably not the best. Other possibilities deserving attention are:

a) 6 ... ♘a5 7 f5 h6! 8 ♕e2 c6 9 ♗c3 ♗xc3 10 ♕xe3 ♕b6 with an equal game.

b) 6 ... ♘g4 7 ♘g5! h6 8 f5 with the better position for White.

c) 6 ... a6 (liquidating the threat of 7 ♘a4):

c1) White achieves nothing after 7 fe de 8 ♗g5 ♘d6 (8 ... h6 9 ♗xf6 ♕xf6 10 ♘d5 ♕d6 11 ♕d2 ♗e6 12 ♖f1 0-0-0, Honfi-Smejkal, Stip 1978, was also equal) 9 ♗xf6 ♕xf6 10 ♘d5 ♕d6 Spielmann-Yates, Moscow 1925.

c2) 7 f5 h6! 8 ♕e2 ♗d7 9 ♗c3 ♘d4 10 ♗xd4 cd 11 ♕d1 0-0 12 0-0 d5 with an excellent game for Black, Tolush-Furman, Leningrad 1946.

d) 6 ... ♗e6 7 ♗b5 (this pin is good despite the fact that :t loses a tempo, whilst 7 ♗xe6 fe 8 fe de gives Black excellent counter-chances) 7 ... a6 (strangely enough Black has no other more useful move. On 7 ... 0-0? unpleasant is 8 f5 ♗d7 9 ♗g5 e.g. 9 ... ♘d6 10 ♗xd7! ♕xd7 11 ♗xf6 gf 12 ♘xd4 ♗xd4 13 ♕d5 and the superiority of White's position in not open to doubt) 8 ♗xc6+ bc 9 fe de 10 ♕e2 White's position is preferable, in Spielmann-Tartakower, Vienna 1914.

Now White has a choice between:

C41   7 h3
C42   7 ♘a4

C41
   7 h3   ♗xf3
   8 ♕xf3   ♘d4

Against Svenonius' recommendation, 8 ... ef, best is:

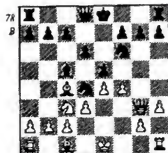a) Rubinstein's suggestion 9 ♗b5! 0-0 10 ♗xc6 bc 11 ♗xf4 with an equal game.

Inferior are:

b) 9 ♕xf4 ♘e5 10 ♖f1 0-0-11 ♗b3 ♘h5 12 ♕g5 ♕xg5 13 ♗xg5 ♘g3 White loses the exchange.

c) 9 ♗xf4 ♘d4 and now:

c1) 10 ♕g3? ♘h5 11 ♕g4 ♘xf4.

c2) 10 ♕d1 c6 11 ♕d2 Mieses-

Spielmann, Baden-Baden 1925. In this position, as Alekhine pointed out, Black would have got a strong attack with the pawn sacrifice 1 ... d5! 12 ed 0-0.

9 ♕g3 (78)

9 ... 0-0

Other possibilities for Black are:

a) 9 ... ♘xc2+!? 10 ♔d1 ♘xa1 11 ♕xg7 when Black has:

a1) 11 ... ♖f8 12 fe de 13 ♗g5 ♗e7 14 ♖f1 ♕h5 15 ♗xf7+ ♔d7 16 ♕xe5 with advantage to White.

a2) 11 ... ♗d7 12 fe de 13 ♖f1 and White has a very strong attack, Chigorin-Pillsbury, Hastings 1895.

b) 9 ... ♕e7 10 fe de 11 ♕d1 c6 12 a4 ♖g8 13 ♖f1 h6 14 ♘e2 0-0 0-15 ♘xd4 ♘xd4 16 c3 ♗b6 17 a5 ♗c7 18 ♗e3 ♔b8 19 ♔c2 White has the advantage, Rubinstein-Hromadka, Mährisch Ostrau 1923.

c) 9 ... ef 10 ♕xg7 ♖f8 11 ♔d1 (if 11 ♗xf4 ♔g8, Black wins by 11 ... ♘h5) 11 ... ♕e7 12 ♖f1 ♖g8 13 ♕h6 ♖xg2 14 ♗xf4 with advantage to White.

10 fe de

11 ♗g5 ♕d6!

Dangerous is 11 ... ♘xc2- 12 ♔d1 ♘xa1 13 ♘d5 ♗e7 14 ♘xe7 ♕xe7 15 ♖f1 ♔h8 16 ♕h4 etc.

12 ♖f1 does not alter matters.

12 ... ♘h5
13 ♕h4 ♘f4

14 ♗xf4 ef 15 ♘d5 ♘e6. The position is equal.

C42

7 ♘a4 (79)
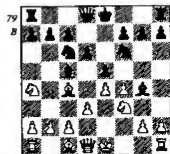
A good move which gives White chances of obtaining an advantage. Black has four possible replies:

C421 7 ... ♗b6
C422 7 ... ♘d7
C423 7 ... ♗xf3
C424 7 ... ♘d4

C421

7 ... ♗b6
8 ♘xb6 ab
9 d5 d5

10 ed ♘xd5 11 h3 and White has a small advantage in Spielmann-Przepiorka, Nürnberg 1906.

11 ♘xc5 de
12 fe ♘d7
13 c3 ♗e6
14 0-0+

Since the bishop sacrifice everything has so far been forced. Now Black has a choice of two retreats for his king:

a) 14 ... ♔g8 15 d4! (the obvious 15 ♕b3 is refuted by the strong reply 15 ... c4!) 15 ... cd 16 cd h6 17 ♕b3 ♕e8 18 ♗e3 White has adequate compensation for the sacrificed piece.

b) 14 ... ♔e8 15 d4 cd 16 cd (Balashov-Matanović, Skopje 1970) 16 ... ♘c5! 17 de ♕xd1 18 ♖xd1 ♔e7 and Black should hold the ending.

C424

7 ... ♘d4
8 ♘xc5 dc
9 c3!

Inferior is 9 fe and not now:

a) 9 ... ♘xe4!? with advantage to White, Perlis-Wolf, Vienna 1904, but:

b) 9 ... ♘d7! 10 ♗f4 ♕e7 11 0-0-0 and Black's position is preferable (Keres).

9 ... ♘xf3+
10 gf ♗h5
11 ♕e2

Defending against the threat of 11 ... ♘xe4. 10 ... ♘xe4 would have lost to 11 0-0 (Keres).

After 11 ♕e2 White's position was preferable in Spielmann-Bogatirchuk, Moscow 1925.

C422

7 ... ♘d7
8 ♘xc5 dc
9 0-0 ef
10 ♗xf4 ♘ce5
11 ♘xe5 ♘xd1

Stronger is 11 ... ♘xe5 12 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 13 ♗xe5 ♗xd1 with unclear play.

12 ♘xf7 ♕f6
13 ♖xd1 ♖f8
14 ♗xe7

White has the advantage, as in Spielmann-Maroczy, Vienna 1907.

C423

7 ... ♗xf3
8 ♕xf3 ♘d4
9 ♕d1!?

Theoretical manuals had a negative attitude towards this move as result of the game Spielmann - Leonhardt, Munich 1906, which continued 9 ... b5 10 ♘xc5 bc 11 fe de 12 ef ♕xf6 with advantage to Black. The continuation cited in the column calls this pessimistic judgement into question.

It still remains true, however, that the unquestionably stronger line is 9 ♕g3! ♘xc2+ 10 ♔d1 ♘xa1 11 ♕xg7 ♖f8 12 ♘xc5 dc 13 fe ♕xe4 14 ♖f1 ♕e7 15 ♗h6 0-0-0 16 ♕g4+ (Keres), or 14 ... ♕d7 15 ♗xf7+ (Levenfish) with a won position for White.

9 ... b5
10 ♗xf7+!

This unexpected sacrifice seems to rehabilitate 9 ♕d1.

10 ... ♔xf7

D

    2   ...   **♕h4+**

The Keene Variation. The move is mentioned in Bilguer's *Handbuch*, but little attention was devoted to the idea by Black's third move led to interest and experimentation by a small group of English players.

    3   g3   **♕e7!** *(80)*
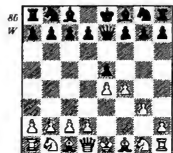
Much stronger than 3 ... ♕f6?. White can now choose from:

D1 4 fe
D2 4 ♘c3
D3 4 d3
D4 4 ♕e2!?

Experience with this line has been limited and yet it is not yet clear which move is best.

D1

    4   fe   d6!
    5   ed
Or:

a) 5 ♘c3 de 6 d3 c6 7 ♕f3 ♘f6 8 h3 (8 ♗g5) 8 ... ♘c6 9 ♘ge2 ♘bd7 10 ♗e3, Lundvall-Harding, Wijk aan Zee 1972, and now 10 ... ♕b4!

with ... ♗c5 to follow.

b) 5 ♘f3 ♗g4 (5 ... ♘c6 is also possible, but not 5 ... de? 6 b3 – Keene) 6 h3 ♗h5 has yet to be tested.

    5   ...   **♕xe4+**
    6   ♕e2   **♕xe2+**
    7   ♘xe2   ♗xd6
    8   ♗g2   ♘c6!

The text is stronger than 8 ... c6?! Sherman-Harding, London 1972.

After 8 ... ♘c6!, Robertson O'Connell, London 1972, continued 9 ♗xc6+?! (if 9 c3 Black is certainly no worse, and the plan based on ... h5 comes into consideration – Keene) 9 ... bc 10 b3 ♘e7 11 ♗b2 f6 (thinking in terms of ... ♔f7 and ... h5-4) 12 c4 c5 13 ♘bc3 ♗b7 14 ♖f1 ♘g6 15 ♘b5 ♘e5! with advantage to Black.

D2

    4   ♘c3   d6

4 ... ef!? may also be good, e.g. 5 d4 fg 6 ♗f4! (6 ♘f3? d5! 7 e5 c6 8 hg ♗g4 Hahne-Harding, Hastings 1972, is good for Black) 6 ... ♘f6 7 e5 d6 when the consequences of 8 ♕e2!? must be investigated.

    5   ♘f3   ♗g4
    6   h3   ♗xf3
    7   ♕xf3   ♘f6

Now 8 ♗c4 or 8 d3 would be better than 8 fe? de 9 ♗c4 ♘c6 10 d3 ♘d4 11 ♕f2 c6 12 ♗e3 ♕d7 (12 ... b5! is better for Black – Keene)

13 ♗xd4! with equality, Milner-Barry—Keene, London 1969.

D3

    4   d3   d5!

4 ... d6 5 ♗g2 ♘c6 6 ♘e2 ♗g4 with equality.

    5   ed   ef+
    6   ♕e2   fg

and if 7 hg then 7 ... ♗g4 is slightly better for Black – Harding.

D4

    4   ♕e2

A suggestion of Basman. Minić says the position after 4 ... d6 5 ♘f3 ♘c6 6 ♗g2 ♘f6 7 d3 ♗g4 8 c3 is unclear.

As one might expect, the introduction of this new line has favoured the innovator (−4 =1 −1 for Black), but no doubt improvements will be found for White.

Index of Complete Games

Index of Variations

1. **Kieseritzky Gambit: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♘f3 g5 4 h4 g4 5 ♘e5**
A 5 ... ♕e7 *1*
B 5 ... ♘c6 *2*
C 5 ... ♗e7 *2*
D 5 ... d5 *2*
E 5 ... ♗g7 Paulsen Defence *3*
F 5 ... ♘f6 Berlin Defence *7*
G 5 ... d6 *11*
H 5 ... h5 *12*

2. **Allgaier Gambit: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♘f3 g5 4 h4 g4 5 ♘g5**
A 5 ... d5 *13*
B 5 ... h6 *14*
C 5 ... ♘f6 *17*

3. **Philidor Gambit: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♘f3 g5 4 ♗c4 ♗g7 5 h4 h6 6 d4 d6**
A 7 ♘c3 *18*
B 7 ♕d3 *19*
C 7 c3 *19*

4. **Hanstein Gambit: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♘f3 g5 4 ♗c4 d6 (4 ... ♗g7 21) 5 d4 h6 (5 ... g4? 21) 6 0-0 (6 g3 21) 6 ... ♗g7**
A 7 ♘c3 *22*
B 7 g3 *23*

5. **Muzio-Polerio Gambit: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♘f3 g5 4 ♗c4 g4 5 0-0**
A 5 ... d5?! *27*
B 5 ... gf 6 ♕xf3:
  B1 6 ... ♕e7 *28*
  B2 6 ... ♕f6 *29*

The King's Gambit is one of the oldest openings and leads to a sharp struggle from the first moves. Bobby Fischer tried to refute it in the early 1960s and yet a few years later he was playing it himself. David Bronstein and Boris Spassky are other great players who have been attracted to the opening's complexities.

This provides a complete system for the enterprising tournament player. The material has been updated to include master praxis of the last decade and is essential for all players who defend 1 e4 with 1...e5.

Grandmaster Viktor Korchnoi, twice challenger for the World Championship, is probably the most combative and uncompromising player ever. Vladimir Zak was trainer of both Spassky and Korchnoi and is regarded as an authority on the King's Gambit.

80 diagrams

The Macmillan Chess Library

Kasparov Teaches Chess
Gary Kasparov

Queen's Gambit Accepted
Eduard Gufeld

Budapest Gambit
Otto Borik

40 Lessons for the Club Player
Aleksander Kostyev

King's Gambit
Viktor Korchnoi and Vladimir Zak

Test Your Positional Play
Robert Bellin & Pietro Ponzetto

Spanish Gambits
Leonid Shamkovich and Eric Schiller

Spanish without ...a6
Mikhail Yudovich

Open Gambits
George Botterill

The Official Laws of Chess
B. Kazic, R. D. Keene & K. A. Lim

From Beginner to Expert in 40 Lessons
Aleksander Kostyev

An Opening Repertoire for White
Raymond Keene

Caro Kann: Classical 4...Bf5
Gary Kasparov & Aleksander Shakarov

Miniatures From the World Champions
Anatoly Karpov

Grand Prix Attack: f4 Against the Sicilian
Julian Hodgson & Lawrence Day

Improve Your Chess Results
Vladimir Zak